

Package ‘Rdistance’

September 18, 2026

Type Package

Title Density and Abundance from Distance-Sampling Surveys

Version 4.5.0

Date 2026-09-17

Language en-US

Maintainer Trent McDonald <trent@mcdonalddatasciences.com>

Description Distance-sampling (<[doi:10.1007/978-3-319-19219-2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-19219-2)>) is a field survey and analytical method that estimates density and abundance of survey targets (e.g., animals) when detection probability declines with observation distance. Distance-sampling is popular in ecology, especially when survey targets are observed from aerial platforms (e.g., airplane or drone), surface vessels (e.g., boat or truck), or along walking transects. Analysis involves fitting smooth (parametric) curves to histograms of observation distances and using those functions to adjust density estimates for missed targets. Routines included here fit curves to observation distance histograms, estimate effective sampling area, density of targets in surveyed areas, and the abundance of targets in a surrounding study area. Confidence interval estimation uses built-in bootstrap resampling. Help files are extensive and have been vetted by multiple authors. Many tutorials are available on the package's website (URL below).

License GNU General Public License

URL <https://mcdonalddatasciences.com/Rdistance.html>

BugReports <https://github.com/tmcd82070/Rdistance/issues>

LazyData TRUE

Suggests testthat (>= 3.0.0),

Depends R (>= 4.1.0), units

Imports graphics, grDevices, stats, utils, crayon, withr, tidyr, dplyr, progress, tibble, tidyselect, dfoptim, expint, multidplyr, sf, OSCARS

RoxygenNote 7.3.3

Encoding UTF-8

Config/testthat/edition 3

NeedsCompilation no

Author Trent McDonald [cre, aut],
 Jason Carlisle [aut],
 Aidan McDonald [aut] (point transect methods),
 Ryan Nielson [ctb] (smoothed likelihood),
 Ben Augustine [ctb] (maximization method),
 James Griswald [ctb] (maximization method),
 Patrick McKann [ctb] (maximization method),
 Lacey Jeroue [ctb] (vignettes),
 Hoffman Abigail [ctb] (vignettes),
 Kleinsausser Michael [ctb] (vignettes),
 Joel Reynolds [ctb] (Gamma likelihood),
 Pham Quang [ctb] (Gamma likelihood),
 Earl Becker [ctb] (Gamma likelihood),
 Aaron Christ [ctb] (Gamma likelihood),
 Brook Russelland [ctb] (Gamma likelihood),
 Stefan Emmons [ctb] (Automated tests),
 Will McDonald [ctb] (Automated tests),
 Reid Olson [ctb] (Automated tests and bug fixes)

Repository CRAN

Date/Publication 2026-09-18 02:20:08 UTC

Contents

Rdistance-package	5
abundEstim	7
AIC.dfunc	11
autoDistSamp	12
bcCI	16
bootstrap	17
bspline.expansion	18
calcLineLength	19
checkNEvalPts	20
checkUnits	21
coef.dfunc	21
colorize	22
convexPartition	23
cosine.expansion	26
dE.multi	28
dE.single	31
dfuncEstim	36
dfuncEstimErrMsg	40
differentiableLikelihoods	41

distances	41
drawTransects	42
EDR	46
effectiveDistance	47
effort	48
errDataUnk	49
estimateN	49
ESW	51
exampleSurveyPoly	52
expandW	53
expansionTerms	54
findSpacing	55
Gamma.like	58
Gamma.start.limits	60
GammaModes	61
GammaReparam	62
getNCores	63
groupSizes	63
gxEstim	64
halfnorm.like	66
halfnorm.start.limits	68
hazrate.like	69
hazrate.start.limits	70
hermite.expansion	71
HookeJeeves	72
huber.cumFunc	73
huber.like	74
huber.start.limits	76
insertOneStepBreaks	77
integrateDfuncs	77
integrateGammaLines	79
integrateHalfnormLines	81
integrateHalfnormPoints	83
integrateHazrateLines	85
integrateHuberLines	86
integrateKey	88
integrateNegexpLines	89
integrateNegexpPoints	91
integrateNumeric	92
integrateOneStepLines	95
integrateOneStepNumeric	97
integrateOneStepPoints	98
integrateTriangleLines	100
intercept.only	102
is.points	103
is.RdistDf	103
is.smoothed	105
is.Unitless	105

likeParamNames	106
lines.dfunc	106
makeLines	108
maximize.g	112
mlEstimates	113
model.matrix.dfunc	113
nCovars	114
negexp.like	115
negexp.start.limits	116
nLL	117
Nlminb	118
observationType	119
oneBsIter	120
oneStep.like	121
oneStep.start.limits	123
Optim	125
Oscars	126
oscarLimits	127
parseModel	127
perpDists	130
plot.dfunc	131
plot.dfunc.para	135
predDensity	138
predDfuncs	138
predict.dfunc	139
predLikelihood	143
print.abund	144
print.dfunc	145
pronghornAreas	146
RdistanceControls	148
RdistDf	149
secondDeriv	154
setOptimizer	155
simple.expansion	156
simpsonCoefs	157
sine.expansion	158
sparrowDetectionData	159
sparrowDf	160
sparrowDfuncObserver	162
sparrowSiteData	162
startLimits	163
summary.abund	165
summary.dfunc	166
summary.rowwise_df	168
thrasherDetectionData	169
thrasherDf	170
thrasherSiteData	171
transectType	172

triangle.like	172
triangle.start.limits	174
unnest	176
varcovarEstim	177
%##%	177

Index	180
--------------	------------

Rdistance-package	<i>Rdistance - Distance Sampling Analyses for Abundance Estimation</i>
-------------------	--

Description

Rdistance contains functions and associated routines to analyze distance-sampling data collected on point or line transects. Some of Rdistance's features include:

- Accommodation of both point and line transect analyses in one routine (`dfuncEstim()`).
- Regression-like formula for inclusion of distance function covariates (`dfuncEstim()`).
- Automatic bootstrap confidence intervals (`abundEstim()`).
- Parallel processing of bootstrap iterations (parallel argument of `abundEstim()`).
- Availability of both study-area and site-level abundance estimates (`help("predict.dfunc")`).
- Rigorous physical measurement requirements and automated conversion when necessary (`%##`, `setUnits()`).
- Classic parametric distance functions (`halfnorm.like()`, `hazrate.like()`, `negexp.like()`), and expansion functions (`cosine.expansion()`, `hermite.expansion()`, `simple.expansion()`).
- Mixture distance functions for non-standard shapes and thresholds (`oneStep.like()`, `triangle.like()`, and `huber.like()`).
- Automated distance function fitting and selection `autoDistSamp()`.
- `print`, `plot`, `predict`, `coef`, and summary methods for distance function objects and abundance classes.

Background:

Distance-sampling is a popular method for abundance estimation in ecology. Line transect surveys are conducted by traversing randomly placed transects in a study area with the objective of sighting animals and estimating density or abundance. Data collected during line transect surveys consists of *target* sightings, either of individuals or groups, and off-transect distances to the original location of the *target*. When *targets* are sighted in groups, data include the number of individuals in the group.

Point transect surveys are similar except that observers stop one or more times along the transect to observe *targets*. Point transects are popular avian survey methods where detections are often auditory cues. Point transects are also for studies using automated auditory detectors or trail cameras. Point transect data consists of radial distances from the observer to the *target*.

The defining feature of distance sampling is the tendency for probability of detection to decline as off-transect or radial distances increase. Targets far from the observer are generally harder to detect

than those closer. In most line transect studies, *targets* on the transect (off-transect distance = 0) are assumed to be sighted with 100% probability. This assumption allows researchers to estimate the proportion of missed targets and in turn adjust the number of sighted *targets* for missed detections. Some studies utilize two observers searching the same areas and are able to estimate the proportion of individuals missed on the transect line and thereby eliminate the assumption that all individuals on the line have been observed.

Purpose:

The author's aims are to provide an easy-to-use, rigorous, and flexible analysis option in R for distance-sampling data. The authors believe that beginning users need easy-to-use and easy-to-understand software, while advanced users require greater flexibility and customization, and their aim is to meet the demands of both groups.

Data sets:

Rdistance contains the following example data sets:

- Line-transect sampling of Brewers sparrows in central Wyoming ([sparrowDf\(\)](#)).
- Point-transect sampling of Sage Thrashers in central Wyoming ([thrasherDf\(\)](#)).

References

Buckland, S.T., Anderson, D.R., Burnham, K.P. and Laake, J.L. 1993. *Distance Sampling: Estimating Abundance of Biological Populations*. Chapman and Hall, London.

Author(s)

Main author and maintainer: Trent McDonald trent@mcdonalddatasciences.com

Coauthors: Ryan Nielson, Jason Carlisle, and Aidan McDonald

Contributors: Ben Augustine, James Griswald, Joel Reynolds, Pham Quang, Earl Becker, Aaron Christ, Brook Russelland, Patrick McKann, Lacey Jeroue, Abigail Hoffman, Michael Kleinsasser, and Ried Olson

See Also

Useful links:

- <https://mcdonalddatasciences.com/Rdistance.html>
- Report bugs at <https://github.com/tmcd82070/Rdistance/issues>

Description

Estimate abundance (or density) from an estimated detection function and supplemental information on observed group sizes, transect lengths, area surveyed, etc. Computes confidence intervals on abundance (or density) using a the bias corrected bootstrap method.

Usage

```
abundEstim(
  object,
  area = NULL,
  propUnitSurveyed = 1,
  ci = 0.95,
  R = 500,
  plot.bs = FALSE,
  showProgress = TRUE,
  parallel = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| object | A fitted Rdistance distance function (class <code>c("dfunc")</code>), normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> , or an Rdistance abundance object (class <code>c("abund", "dfunc")</code>), normally produced by a call to <code>abundEstim()</code> . If the latter, Rdistance adds bootstrap iterations to existing iterations in object. |
| area | A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If area is NULL (the default), area will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If area is not NULL, it must have measurement units assigned by the <code>units</code> package. The units on area must be convertible to squared output units. Units on area must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on area must be convertible to "foo^2" by the <code>units</code> package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable. |
| propUnitSurveyed | A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, <code>propUnitSurveyed = 1</code> . If only a single side of line transects were observed, set <code>propUnitSurveyed = 0.5</code> . For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in <code>x</code> . |
| ci | A scalar indicating the confidence level of confidence intervals. Confidence intervals are computed using a bias corrected bootstrap method. If <code>ci = NULL</code> or <code>ci == NA</code> , confidence intervals are not computed. |

<code>R</code>	The number of bootstrap iterations to conduct when <code>ci</code> is not <code>NULL</code> . If object is an abundance object, this is the number of <i>additional</i> bootstrap iterations added to existing iterations (if any pre-existing iterations exist).
<code>plot.bs</code>	A logical scalar indicating whether to plot individual bootstrap iterations. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>showProgress</code>	A logical indicating whether to show a text-based progress bar during bootstrapping. Default is <code>TRUE</code> . It is handy to shut off the progress bar if running this within another function. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	A logical scalar, or a positive integer; ignored unless confidence intervals are requested (i.e., <code>!is.null(ci)</code>). If <code>TRUE</code> , bootstrap iterations are run in parallel using the maximum number of CPU cores minus 1. The maximum number of CPU cores is reported by <code>parallel::detectCores()</code> . If a positive integer (<code>1 <= parallel <= maximum cores</code>), bootstrap iterations are performed in parallel on that many cores. If <code>FALSE</code> , bootstrap iterations are performed in series, and progress will be shown if <code>showProgress == TRUE</code> . Parameters <code>showProgress</code> and <code>plot.bs</code> are ignored when operating in parallel.

Details

The abundance estimate for line-transect surveys (if no covariates are included in the detection function and both sides of the transect are observed) is

$$N = \frac{n(A)}{2(ESW)(L)}$$

where n is total number of sighted individuals (i.e., `sum(groupSizes(dfnc))`), L is the total length of surveyed transect (i.e., `sum(effort(dfnc))`), and ESW is effective strip width computed from the estimated distance function (i.e., `ESW(dfnc)`). If only one side of transects were observed, the "2" in the denominator is not present (or, replaced with a "1").

The abundance estimate for point transect surveys (if no covariates are included) is

$$N = \frac{n(A)}{\pi(ESR^2)(P)}$$

where n is total number of sighted individuals (i.e., `sum(groupSizes(dfnc))`), P is the total number of surveyed points (i.e., `sum(effort(dfnc))`), and ESR is effective search radius computed from the estimated distance function (i.e., `ESR(dfnc)`).

This routine, `abundEstim`, estimates abundance on the entire study area. Site-specific density estimates are computed by `predict(x, type = "density")`, which returns a tibble containing density and abundance on the area surveyed by every transect.

Value

An Rdistance 'abundance estimate' object, which is a list of class `c("abund", "dfnc")`, containing all the components of a "dfnc" object (see `dfncEstim()`), plus the following:

<code>estimates</code>	A tibble containing fitted coefficients in the distance function, density in the area(s) surveyed, abundance on the study area, the number of groups seen between <code>w.lo</code> and <code>w.hi</code> , the number of individuals seen between <code>w.lo</code> and <code>w.hi</code> ,
------------------------	--

	study area size, surveyed area, average group size, and average effective detection distance.
B	If confidence intervals were requested, a tibble containing all bootstrap values of coefficients, density, abundance, groups seen, individuals seen, study area size, surveyed area size, average group size, and average effective detection distance. If an iteration fails, the corresponding row in B is NA (hence, use <code>na.rm = TRUE</code> when computing summaries). Columns 2 through <code>length(coef(dfnc))+1</code> contain bootstrap realizations of the distance function's coefficients.
ci	Confidence level of the confidence intervals

Bootstrap Confidence Intervals:

Rdistance's nested data frames (see `RdistDf()`) contain all of the information required to estimate bootstrap CIs. Rdistance resamples, with replacement, rows of the `$data` component contained in all Rdistance fitted models. Rdistance assumes all rows of `$data` are independent and represent information from one transect. The `$data` component also contains information on which observations inform the detection function, which observations should be counted as detected targets, and which transects count toward transect length.

After resampling rows of `$data`, Rdistance refits the distance function using non-missing distances, recomputes the detected number of targets using non-missing group sizes on transects with non-missing length, and re-computes total transect length from transects with non-missing lengths. After iterations, bias corrected confidence intervals are computed (Manly, 1997, section 3.4). Distance functions are not re-selected during bootstrap resampling. The model contained in the input object is re-fitted every iteration.

During bootstrap iterations, distance function estimation can fail. An iteration can fail for a two reasons: (1) no detections on the iteration, and (2) a bad configuration of distances that push the distance function's parameters to their boundaries. When an iteration fails, Rdistance skips the iteration, which effectively ignores failed iterations. If the proportion of failed iterations is small (less than 20% by default), the resulting abundance confidence interval is probably valid and no warning is issued. If the proportion of non-convergent iterations is not small (exceeds 20% by default), a warning is issued. The warning can be modified by re-setting option `"Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning"` to the acceptable proportion of failures.. Setting `options(Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning = 1.0)` will suppress the warning. Setting `options(Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning = 0.0)` will warn if any iteration failed. Results (density and effective sampling distance) from all successful iterations are contained in the non-NA rows of data frame 'B' in the output object.

Missing Transect Lengths

Transect lengths can be missing in the `RdistDf` object. Missing length transects are equivalent to 0 [m] transects and do not count toward total surveyed units, nor do group sizes on these transects count toward total detected individuals. Use NA-length transects to include their associated distances during distance function estimation, but not when estimating abundance. For example, this allows estimation of abundance on one study area using off-transect distances from another. This allows sightability to be estimated using two or more similar targets (e.g., two similar species), but abundance to be estimated separate for each target type. Include NA-length transects by including the "extra" distance observations in the detection data frame, with valid site IDs, but set the length of those site IDs to NA in the site data frame.

Point Transect Lengths

Point transects do not have a physical measurement for length. The "length" of point transects is the number of points on the transect. Point transects can contain only one point. Rdistance treats transects of points as independent and bootstrap resamples them to estimate variance. The number of points on each point transect must exist in the RdistDf and cannot have physical measurement units (it is a count, not a distance).

References

Manly, B.F.J. (1997) *Randomization, bootstrap, and Monte-Carlo methods in biology*, London: Chapman and Hall.

Buckland, S.T., D.R. Anderson, K.P. Burnham, J.L. Laake, D.L. Borchers, and L. Thomas. (2001) *Introduction to distance sampling: estimating abundance of biological populations*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `autoDistSamp()`, `predict.dfunc()` with `'type = "density"'`.

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
# sparrowDf <- RdistDf(sparrowSiteData, sparrowDetectionData)
data(sparrowDf)

# Fit half-normal detection function
dfunc <- sparrowDf |>
  dfuncEstim(formula=dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
             , likelihood="halfnorm"
             , w.hi=150 %m%.
  )

# Estimate abundance - Convenient for programming
abundDf <- estimateN(dfunc
                    , area = 4105 %km^2%.
                    )

# Same - Nicer output
# Set ci=0.95 (or another value) to estimate bootstrap CI's
fit <- abundEstim(dfunc
                 , area = 4105 %km^2%.
                 , ci = NULL
                 )
summary(fit)
```

AIC.dfunc

*AIC-related fit statistics for detection functions***Description**

Computes AICc, AIC, or BIC for estimated distance functions.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
AIC(object, ..., criterion = "AICc")
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
...	Included for compatibility with generic predict methods.
criterion	String specifying the criterion to compute. Either "AICc", "AIC", or "BIC".

Details

Regular Akaike's information criterion (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Akaike_information_criterion) (*AIC*) is

$$AIC = LL + 2p,$$

where *LL* is the maximized value of the log likelihood (the minimized value of the negative log likelihood) and *p* is the number of coefficients estimated in the detection function. For *dfunc* objects, $AIC = \text{obj}\$loglik + 2 * \text{length}(\text{coef}(\text{obj}))$.

A correction for small sample size, *AICc*, is

$$AIC_c = LL + 2p + \frac{2p(p+1)}{n-p-1},$$

where *n* is sample size or number of detected groups for distance analyses. By default, this function computes *AICc*. *AICc* converges quickly to *AIC* as *n* increases.

The Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC) is

$$BIC = LL + \log(n)p,$$

.

Value

A scalar, the requested fit statistic for object.

References

Burnham, K. P., and D. R. Anderson, 2002. *Model selection and multi-model inference: A practical information-theoretic approach, Second ed.* Springer-Verlag. ISBN 0-387-95364-7.

McQuarrie, A. D. R., and Tsai, C.-L., 1998. *Regression and time series model selection.* World Scientific. ISBN 981023242X

See Also

`coef()`, `dfuncEstim()`

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(dist~1)

# Fit statistics
AIC(dfunc) # AICc
AIC(dfunc, criterion="AIC") # AIC
AIC(dfunc, criterion="BIC") # BIC
```

autoDistSamp

Automated classical distance analysis

Description

Perform automated likelihood, expansion, and series selection for a classic distance sampling analysis. Estimate abundance using the best fitting likelihood, expansion, and series.

Usage

```
autoDistSamp(
  data,
  formula,
  likelihoods = c("halfnorm", "hazrate", "negexp"),
  w.lo = setUnits(0, "m"),
  w.hi = NULL,
  expansions = 0:3,
  series = c("cosine"),
  x.scl = w.lo,
  g.x.scl = 1,
  warn = TRUE,
  outputUnits = NULL,
  area = NULL,
  propUnitSurveyed = 1,
  ci = 0.95,
  R = 500,
```

```

plot.bs = FALSE,
showProgress = TRUE,
parallel = TRUE,
plot = TRUE,
criterion = "AICc"
)

```

Arguments

data	An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function RdistDf() creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. is.RdistDf() checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
formula	A standard formula object. For example, <code>dist ~ 1</code> , <code>dist ~ covar1 + covar2</code> . The left-hand side (before <code>~</code>) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including <code>+ groupsize(<variable>)</code> in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.
likelihoods	String vector specifying the likelihoods to fit. See 'likelihood' parameter of dfuncEstim() .
w.lo	Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If <code>w.lo</code> is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See help(unitHelpers) for assistance assigning units.
w.hi	Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in <code>dist</code> . This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., <code>NULL</code>), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If <code>w.hi</code> is specified, it must have measurement units. See help(unitHelpers) for assistance assigning units.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., <code>expansions</code> is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).
series	If <code>expansions > 0</code> , this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
x.scl	The x coordinate (a distance) at which the detection function will be scaled. <code>x.scl</code> can be a distance or the string "max". When <code>x.scl</code> is specified (i.e., not 0 or "max"), it must have measurement units assigned. See help(unitHelpers) for assistance assigning units.

<code>g.x.scl</code>	Height of the distance function at coordinate <code>x</code> . The distance function will be scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$. If <code>g.x.scl</code> is not a data frame, it must be a numeric value (vector of length 1) between 0 and 1.
<code>warn</code>	A logical scalar specifying whether to issue an R warning if the estimation did not converge or if one or more parameter estimates are at their boundaries. For estimation, <code>warn</code> should generally be left at its default value of <code>TRUE</code> . When computing bootstrap confidence intervals, setting <code>warn = FALSE</code> turns off annoying warnings when an iteration does not converge. Regardless of <code>warn</code> , after completion all messages about convergence and boundary conditions are printed by <code>print.dfunc</code> , <code>print.abund</code> , and <code>plot.dfunc</code> .
<code>outputUnits</code>	A string specifying the symbolic measurement units for results. Valid units are listed in <code>units::valid_udunits()</code> . The strings for common distance symbolic units are: "m" - meters, "ft" - feet, "cm" - centimeters, "mm" - millimeters, "mi" - miles, "nmile" - nautical miles ("nm" is nano meters), "in" - inches, "yd" - yards, "km" - kilometers, "fathom" - fathoms, "chains" - chains, and "furlong" - furlongs. If <code>outputUnits</code> is unspecified (<code>NULL</code>), output units will be the same as those on distances in <code>data</code> .
<code>area</code>	A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If <code>area</code> is <code>NULL</code> (the default), <code>area</code> will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If <code>area</code> is not <code>NULL</code> , it must have measurement units assigned by the <code>units</code> package. The units on <code>area</code> must be convertible to squared output units. Units on <code>area</code> must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on <code>area</code> must be convertible to "foo^2" by the <code>units</code> package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable.
<code>propUnitSurveyed</code>	A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, <code>propUnitSurveyed = 1</code> . If only a single side of line transects were observed, set <code>propUnitSurveyed = 0.5</code> . For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in <code>x</code> .
<code>ci</code>	A scalar indicating the confidence level of confidence intervals. Confidence intervals are computed using a bias corrected bootstrap method. If <code>ci = NULL</code> or <code>ci == NA</code> , confidence intervals are not computed.
<code>R</code>	The number of bootstrap iterations to conduct when <code>ci</code> is not <code>NULL</code> . If object is an abundance object, this is the number of <i>additional</i> bootstrap iterations added to existing iterations (if any pre-existing iterations exist).
<code>plot.bs</code>	A logical scalar indicating whether to plot individual bootstrap iterations. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>showProgress</code>	A logical indicating whether to show a text-based progress bar during bootstrapping. Default is <code>TRUE</code> . It is handy to shut off the progress bar if running this within another function. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	A logical scalar, or a positive integer; ignored unless confidence intervals are requested (i.e., <code>!is.null(ci)</code>). If <code>TRUE</code> , bootstrap iterations are run in parallel using the maximum number of CPU cores minus 1. The maximum number of

	CPU cores is reported by <code>parallel::detectCores()</code> . If a positive integer ($1 \leq \text{parallel} \leq \text{maximum cores}$), bootstrap iterations are performed in parallel on that many cores. If <code>FALSE</code> , bootstrap iterations are performed in series, and progress will be shown if <code>showProgress == TRUE</code> . Parameters <code>showProgress</code> and <code>plot.bs</code> are ignored when operating in parallel.
<code>plot</code>	Logical scalar specifying whether to plot models during model selection. If <code>TRUE</code> , a histogram with fitted distance function is plotted for every model. The function pauses between each plot and prompts the user for whether they want to continue. To suppress user prompts, set <code>plot = FALSE</code> .
<code>criterion</code>	A string specifying the criterion to use when assessing model fit. The best fitting model, as defined by this routine, has the lowest value of this criterion. This must be one of "AICc" (the default), "AIC", or "BIC". See AIC.dfunc() for formulas.

Details

During distance function selection, all combinations of likelihoods, series, and number of expansions is fitted. For example, if `likelihoods` has 3 elements, `series` has 2 elements, and `expansions` has 4 elements, this routine fits a total of $3 (\text{likelihoods}) * 2 (\text{series}) * 4 (\text{expansions}) = 24$ models. Default parameters fit 9 detection functions, i.e., all combinations of "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp" likelihoods and 0 through 3 expansions. Other combinations are specified through values of `likelihoods`, `series`, and `expansions`.

Suppress all intermediate output using `plot.bs=FALSE`, `showProgress=FALSE`, and `plot=FALSE`.

The returned abundance estimate object contains an additional component, the fitting table (a list of models fitted and criterion values) in component `$fitTable`.

Value

An Rdistance 'abundance estimate' object, which is a list of class `c("abund", "dfunc")`, containing all the components of a "dfunc" object (see [dfuncEstim\(\)](#)), plus the following:

<code>estimates</code>	A tibble containing fitted coefficients in the distance function, density in the area(s) surveyed, abundance on the study area, the number of groups seen between <code>w.lo</code> and <code>w.hi</code> , the number of individuals seen between <code>w.lo</code> and <code>w.hi</code> , study area size, surveyed area, average group size, and average effective detection distance.
<code>B</code>	If confidence intervals were requested, a tibble containing all bootstrap values of coefficients, density, abundance, groups seen, individuals seen, study area size, surveyed area size, average group size, and average effective detection distance. If an iteration fails, the corresponding row in <code>B</code> is <code>NA</code> (hence, use <code>na.rm = TRUE</code> when computing summaries). Columns 2 through <code>length(coef(df)) + 1</code> contain bootstrap realizations of the distance function's coefficients.
<code>ci</code>	Confidence level of the confidence intervals

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [abundEstim\(\)](#).

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowDf)

autoDistSamp(data = sparrowDf
              , formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
              , likelihoods = c("halfnorm", "negexp")
              , expansions = 0
              , plot = FALSE
              , ci = NULL
              , area = 1 %ha%.
)

## Not run:
autoDistSamp(data = sparrowDf
              , formula = dist ~ 1 + groupsize(groupsize)
              , ci = 0.95
              , area = 1 %ha%.
)

## End(Not run)
```

bcCI

Bias corrected bootstraps

Description

Calculate bias-corrected confidence intervals for bootstrap data using methods in Manly textbook.

Usage

```
bcCI(x.bs, x, ci = 0.95)
```

Arguments

x.bs	A vector of bootstrap estimates of some quantity.
x	A scalar of the original estimate of the quantity.
ci	A scalar of the desired confidence interval coverage.

Value

A named vector containing the lower and upper endpoints of the bias-corrected bootstrap confidence interval.

bootstrap	<i>Perform bootstrap iterations</i>
-----------	-------------------------------------

Description

Performs bootstrap resampling iterations, either in parallel across CPU cores or in serial on a single core.

Usage

```
bootstrap(
  object,
  area,
  propUnitSurveyed,
  R,
  plot.bs,
  plotCovValues,
  showProgress,
  parallel,
  cores
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| object | A fitted Rdistance distance function (class <code>c("dfunc")</code>), normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> , or an Rdistance abundance object (class <code>c("abund", "dfunc")</code>), normally produced by a call to <code>abundEstim()</code> . If the latter, Rdistance adds bootstrap iterations to existing iterations in object. |
| area | A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If area is NULL (the default), area will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If area is not NULL, it must have measurement units assigned by the units package. The units on area must be convertible to squared output units. Units on area must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on area must be convertible to "foo^2" by the units package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable. |
| propUnitSurveyed | A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, <code>propUnitSurveyed = 1</code> . If only a single side of line transects were observed, set <code>propUnitSurveyed = 0.5</code> . For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in x. |
| R | The number of bootstrap iterations to conduct when ci is not NULL. If object is an abundance object, this is the number of <i>additional</i> bootstrap iterations added to existing iterations (if any pre-existing iterations exist). |

<code>plot.bs</code>	A logical scalar indicating whether to plot individual bootstrap iterations. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>plotCovValues</code>	Data frame containing values of covariates to plot. Ignored if <code>plot.bs</code> is <code>FALSE</code> .
<code>showProgress</code>	A logical indicating whether to show a text-based progress bar during bootstrapping. Default is <code>TRUE</code> . It is handy to shut off the progress bar if running this within another function. Ignored unless <code>parallel = FALSE</code> .
<code>parallel</code>	Logical scalar. <code>TRUE</code> if we are running iterations in parallel across CPU cores. Number of cores specified in <code>cores</code> .
<code>cores</code>	Integer scalar. The number of CPU cores to use during parallel operations, if requested. Ignored if <code>parallel == FALSE</code> .

Value

A data frame containing density, abundance, and other relevant statistics for every bootstrap iteration. Number of rows is `R`. If the model from one iteration failed for any reason (e.g., non-convergence), the entire row except the ID column is missing.

See Also

[abundEstim\(\); oneBsIter\(\)](#)

<code>bspline.expansion</code>	<i>B-spline expansion terms</i>
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

Description

Computes spline, specifically b-spline, expansion terms that modify the shape of distance likelihood functions.

Usage

```
bspline.expansion(x, expansions)
```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	A numeric matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion series. For distance analysis, <code>x</code> should be the proportion of the maximum sighting distance at which a group was sighted, i.e., $x = d/w$, where d is sighting distance and w is maximum sighting distance.
<code>expansions</code>	A scalar specifying the number of expansion terms to compute. Must be one of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5.

Value

A 3D array of size `nrow(x) X ncol(x) X expansions`. The 'pages' (3rd dimension) of this array are the cosine expansions of `x`. i.e., page 1 is the first expansion term of `x`, page 2 is the second expansion term of `x`, etc.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [cosine.expansion\(\)](#), [hermite.expansion\(\)](#), [simple.expansion\(\)](#).

Examples

```
x <- matrix(seq(0, 1, length = 200), ncol = 1)
spl.expn <- bspline.expansion(x, 5)
plot(range(x), range(spl.expn), type="n")
matlines(x, spl.expn[,1,1:5], col=rainbow(5), lty = 1)
```

calcLineLength

Calculate target transect length

Description

Calculate the total length of transects to survey to reach a user-provided target number of detected groups. All else being equal, areas with higher group densities will require less survey effort than those with higher densities.

Usage

```
calcLineLength(sPoly, N, p, w, targetGroups, avgGroupSize)
```

Arguments

sPoly	An sf or sfc object containing the polygon(s) (MULTIPOLYGON or POLYGON geometries) within which transects will be placed. sPoly must be projected to a planar coordinate system whose linear unit is meters (ideally an equal-area projection so areas are undistorted). Geographic coordinates are rejected.
N	Scalar, expected abundance of individuals in the study area. Estimates from past surveys are likely your best option here. Used to calculate the expected group density in the survey area.
p	Scalar, expected probability of detecting a group. If expected strip width (ESW) is available, set $p = \text{ESW}/w$.
w	Scalar, nominal width of the survey strip. Must have measurement units attached.
targetGroups	Scalar, the desired number of detected groups at the end of surveys.
avgGroupSize	Scalar, expected average number of individuals in each group.

Value

Scalar, the total length of transects to survey. Units of measurement attached to the return are the square root of the polygon's area. E.g., if sPoly is projected to a standard UTM plane, their area is m^2 , and transect length units will be m.

Author(s)

Jason Carlisle, based on some clever back-of-the-napkin math by Trent McDonald and Greg Hiatt at a WGFD training on pronghorn LT surveys in Laramie in April 2022.

Examples

```
data(exampleSurveyPoly)
calcLineLength(sPoly = exampleSurveyPoly[1, ]
               , N = 12000
               , p = 0.5
               , w = units::set_units(200, "m")
               , targetGroups = 300
               , avgGroupSize = 2.5
               )
```

checkNEvalPts

Check number of numeric integration intervals

Description

Check that number of integration intervals is odd and sufficiently large. Plus, compute and store the Simpson's Composite rule coefficients.

Usage

```
checkNEvalPts(nEvalPts)
```

Arguments

nEvalPts An integer to check.

Value

The first element of nEvalPts is returned if it is acceptable. If nEvalPts is not acceptable, an error is thrown. Simpson's composite coefficients are store in options()

checkUnits	<i>Check for the presence of units</i>
------------	--

Description

Check for the presence of physical measurement units on key columns of an RdistDf data frame.

Usage

```
checkUnits(m1)
```

Arguments

m1	An Rdistance model list produced by parseModel() containing a list of parameters for the distance model.
----	--

Value

The input m1 list, with units of various quantities converted to common units. If a check fails, for example, a quantity does not have units, an error is thrown.

coef.dfunc	<i>Coefficients of an estimated detection function</i>
------------	--

Description

Extract distance model coefficients from an estimated detection function object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
coef(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to dfuncEstim() .
...	Ignored

Value

The estimated coefficient vector for the detection function. Length and interpretation of values vary depending on the form of the detection function and expansion terms.

See Also

[AIC\(\)](#), [dfuncEstim\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(sparrowDfuncObserver) # pre-estimated dfunc

# Same as sparrowDfuncObserver$par
coef(sparrowDfuncObserver)

## Not run:
data(sparrowDf)
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(dist~bare + observer,
                                w.hi = 150 %m%.)
coef(dfunc)

## End(Not run)
```

colorize

Add color to result if terminal accepts it

Description

Add ANSI color to a string using the crayon package, if the R environment accepts color. This function is needed because some output cannot be colorized. Color determination is made by `crayon::has_color()`.

Rdistance results often include units, e.g., "25 [m]". Only colorize the numbers, not the units. Everything between the first set of square brackets ([. . .]) is NOT colorized. Subsequent sets of brackets (e.g., "25 [m] + 30 [ft]") ARE colorized (i.e., "[ft]" is color).

Usage

```
colorize(STR, col = NULL, bg = NULL)
```

Arguments

STR	A vector of strings to colorize.
col	A string specifying the desired foreground color. This is passed straight to <code>crayon::style</code> and so must be recognized as one of the 8 base crayon colors. i.e., "black", "red", "green", "yellow", "blue", "magenta", "cyan", "white", and "silver" (silver = gray). By default, numbers are styled in "green".
bg	A string specifying the desired background color. Must be one of "bgBlack", "bgRed", "bgGreen", "bgYellow", "bgBlue", "bgMagenta", "bgCyan", or "bgWhite". By default, no background is applied.

Value

If color is not allowed in the terminal, the input string is returned unperturbed. If color is allowed, the input string is returned with color and background ANSI code surrounding the initial part of the string from character 1 to the character before the [in the first pair of [].

See Also

crayon::style

convexPartition

Partition a concave polygon into more-convex pieces

Description

Splits a concave (non-convex) polygon into several more-convex sub-polygons using *Approximate Convex Decomposition* (ACD) (method = "fast") or by maximizing the minimum solidity of sub-polygons (method = "optimum") The number of sub-polygons is specified by either a concavity tolerance, fixed by the caller (nPieces), or chosen automatically.

Usage

```
convexPartition(
  x,
  nPieces = "optimum",
  method = c("fast", "optimum"),
  concavityTol = NA,
  simplifyTol = NA,
  minPieceFrac = 0.1,
  maxPieces = 200,
  nStarts = 3,
  nfmax = 100,
  solidityTol = 0.03
)
```

Arguments

x	An sf, sfc, or sfg POLYGON, or a two-column matrix of coordinates. If x contains several polygons only the first is used (with a message); call the function once per feature otherwise. Holes are ignored. Distances (and hence concavityTol and simplifyTol) are measured in the units of x's coordinate reference system, so x should be projected to a planar CRS (ideally equal-area) whose linear unit is meters.
nPieces	Number of pieces to produce. Either an integer ≥ 2 , in which case exactly that many pieces are returned, or the string "optimum" (the default), in which case the count is chosen either by concavityTol when method = "fast", or by maximizing minimum solidity over 2, 3, ..., 10 pieces when method = "optimum". Values above 10 are reachable only by passing an integer.
method	Character string selecting how the cut locations are chosen: "fast" (default) Greedy, deterministic hierarchical ACD. For each cut, the polygon(s) is cut at the most concave vertex using the shortest interior chord.

	"optimum" Maximize the minimum solidity across cut vertices using <code>OSCARS::oscars()</code> . Much slower.
concavityTol	Concavity tolerance, in the linear unit of x's CRS (e.g., meters). A piece is "convex enough" when no vertex lies farther than this from its convex hull. Larger values give fewer, less convex pieces; smaller values yield more convex pieces. When NA (the default) it is set to 5% of the hull "width" (<code>sqrt(hull_area)</code>). Used only when <code>nPieces</code> = "optimum" and <code>method</code> = "fast".
simplifyTol	Douglas-Peucker tolerance (same units as <code>concavityTol</code>) used only to decide <i>where</i> to cut, not to alter the returned boundary. When NA (the default) it is set to <code>concavityTol / 4</code> . Use 0 to disable simplification and decide cuts on the full-resolution boundary (slower, and more sensitive to digitizing noise). It also sets the resolution of the <code>method</code> = "optimum" search, whose candidate cut vertices are the simplified boundary's vertices.
minPieceFrac	A candidate cut is rejected if it would create a piece smaller than this fraction of the parent's area. Guards against sliver pieces. Defaults to 0.10.
maxPieces	Safety cap on the number of pieces produced. Defaults to 200. Raised automatically when <code>nPieces</code> is a larger integer.
nStarts	Number of starting points per candidate piece count when <code>method</code> = "optimum". The first start is always the "fast" solution while the remainder are random vertices. Defaults to 3. Ignored when <code>method</code> = "fast".
nfmax	Maximum objective evaluations per start, passed to <code>OSCARS::oscars.control()</code> . Defaults to 100. Larger values search harder and take proportionally longer. Ignored when <code>method</code> = "fast".
solidityTol	Slack used to break ties when both <code>nPieces</code> and <code>method</code> are "optimum". The fewest pieces whose minimum solidity is within <code>solidityTol</code> of the overall best is returned. Defaults to 0.03. Larger values favor fewer, larger pieces. Ignored otherwise.

Details

Convex decomposition of a polygon is a classical problem in computational geometry. Exact minimum-piece methods (Keil & Snoeyink; Chazelle & Dobkin 1985) produce the fewest convex pieces but in practice often generate many sliver polygons. This routine implements *Approximate Convex Decomposition* (Lien & Amato 2006), which is governed by a concavity tolerance and tends to yield a small number of realistic but sub-optimal cuts.

The greedy algorithm (`method` = "fast"):

The "fast" algorithm is the top-down, one-cut-at-a-time hierarchical decomposition of Lien & Amato (2006) using the fixed-component-count form of Mamou & Ghorbel (2009). Starting from the whole polygon it repeatedly:

1. computes each vertex's *concavity*. A vertex's concavity is its straight-line distance to its piece's convex hull;
2. selects the piece containing the vertex with maximum concavity;
3. cuts the polygon at that vertex using the shortest *interior chord*. An interior chord is a diagonal that stays inside the piece and splits it into two non-trivial pieces.

Splitting stops when no vertex has concavity greater than `concavityTol` (`nPieces = "optimum"`), or as soon as `nPieces` pieces exist.

The optimization algorithm (`method = "optimum"`):

The "fast" algorithm is fast but does not necessarily lead to a set of pieces that all have high solidity. The `method = "optimum"` algorithm maximizes the minimum solidity of pieces by passing a candidate set of vertices at which to cut the polygon to `OSCARS::oscars()`, a derivative-free optimization method (Price et al ???).

For a fixed number of pieces, k , the "optimum" algorithm searches from `nStarts` starting points and completes `nfmax` `OSCARS::oscars()` iterations. The first start point is the `method = "fast"` solution, and this ensures that `method = "optimum"` only ever improves solidity. The other `nStarts` starting points are random vertices (use `set.seed()` for reproducibility).

The best cut points returned by the `nStarts` OSCARS runs is then polished because OSCARS operates on a continuous scale and the objective function is flat between vertices. Polishing entails moving vertices in the solution to all other candidate vertices, computing solidity, and keeping the best.

When `nPieces = "optimum"` and `method = "optimum"`, the number of pieces is optimized over $k = 1, 2, \dots, 10$. The *smallest* k whose minimum piece solidity comes within `solidityTol` of the overall best from the entire set of k is returned.

A progress bar is provided once the optimization has been running for 10 seconds. `method = "optimum"` can require orders of magnitude more time than `method = "fast"`.

Value

An sf POLYGON data frame with one row per piece. Attributes of the polygons are:

<code>piece</code>	Piece id (an integer), ordered largest-area first.
<code>solidity</code>	Area divided by convex-hull area; 1 for a convex piece, smaller for concave pieces.
<code>area</code>	Piece area, with units (from <code>sf::st_area()</code>).

The pieces partition the input polygon (their union equals `x` and their areas sum to the area of `x`). The CRS of `x` is carried through. If `x` is "convex enough", a one-row data frame containing the (unchanged) polygon is returned.

Author(s)

Trent McDonald.

References

Chazelle, B. and Dobkin, D. P. (1985) Optimal convex decompositions. In G. T. Toussaint (ed.), *Computational Geometry*, pages 63-133. North-Holland, Amsterdam.

put in reference to OSCARS, Chris Prine et al

Keil, J. M. (2000) Polygon decomposition. In J.-R. Sack and J. Urrutia (eds.), *Handbook of Computational Geometry*, pages 491-518. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Lien, J.-M. and Amato, N. M. (2006) Approximate convex decomposition of polygons. *Computational Geometry* 35(1-2):100-123. doi:10.1016/j.comgeo.2005.10.005

Mamou, K. and Ghorbel, F. (2009) A simple and efficient approach for 3D mesh approximate convex decomposition. In *16th IEEE International Conference on Image Processing (ICIP)*, pages 3501-3504. doi:[10.1109/ICIP.2009.5414068](https://doi.org/10.1109/ICIP.2009.5414068)

See Also

[drawTransects\(\)](#), [makeLines\(\)](#), [OSCARS::oscars\(\)](#),

Examples

```
# A banana-shaped (concave) polygon in a planar CRS (meters).
arc <- sf::st_sf(geometry = sf::st_sfc(sf::st_polygon(list(rbind(
  c(0, 0), c(40, 30), c(80, 40), c(120, 30), c(160, 0),
  c(150, 0), c(115, 22), c(80, 30), c(45, 22), c(10, 0), c(0, 0)))),
  crs = 3338))

sf::st_area(arc) / sf::st_area(sf::st_convex_hull(arc)) # low solidity

# Tolerance-driven: let concavityTol decide how many pieces.
pieces <- convexPartition(arc, concavityTol = 8)
nrow(pieces)          # two more-convex pieces, cut at the apex
pieces$solidity
plot(pieces["piece"])

# Exactly three pieces, cut greedily.
convexPartition(arc, nPieces = 3, method = "fast")$solidity

# Exactly three pieces, cut where OSCARS says the worst piece is best.
set.seed(1)
convexPartition(arc, nPieces = 3, method = "optimum")$solidity

# Let the search pick the number of pieces too. Budgets are cut down here
# to keep the example quick; the defaults search harder.
set.seed(1)
best <- convexPartition(arc, nPieces = "optimum", method = "optimum",
  nStarts = 1, nfmax = 20)
nrow(best)
best$solidity
```

cosine.expansion

Cosine expansion terms

Description

Computes the cosine expansion terms that modify the shape of distance likelihood functions.

Usage

```
cosine.expansion(x, expansions)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion series. For distance analysis, x should be the proportion of the maximum sighting distance at which a group was sighted, i.e., $x = d/w$, where d is sighting distance and w is maximum sighting distance.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of expansion terms to compute. Must be one of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5.

Details

The cosine expansion used here is:

- **First term:**

$$h_1(x) = \cos(2\pi x),$$

- **Second term:**

$$h_2(x) = \cos(4\pi x),$$

- **Third term:**

$$h_3(x) = \cos(6\pi x),$$

- **Fourth term:**

$$h_4(x) = \cos(8\pi x),$$

- **Fifth term:**

$$h_5(x) = \cos(10\pi x),$$

The maximum number of expansion terms is 5.

The cosine expansion frequency in Rdistance is 2π . Each term is two pi more than the previous. The sine expansion frequency in Rdistance is pi. Consequently, the sine and cosine expansions fit different models.

Value

A 3D array of size `nrow(x)` X `ncol(x)` X `expansions`. The 'pages' (3rd dimension) of this array are the cosine expansions of x. i.e., page 1 is the first expansion term of x, page 2 is the second expansion term of x, etc.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [hermite.expansion\(\)](#), [simple.expansion\(\)](#)

Examples

```
x <- matrix(seq(0, 1, length = 200), ncol = 1)
cos.expn <- cosine.expansion(x, 5)
plot(range(x), range(cos.expn), type="n")
matlines(x, cos.expn[,1,1:5], col=rainbow(5), lty = 1)
```

dE.multi

*Estimate multiple-observer line-transect distance functions***Description**

Fits a detection function to off-transect distances collected by multiple observers.

Usage

```
dE.multi(
  data,
  formula,
  likelihood = "halfnorm",
  w.lo = setUnits(0, "m"),
  w.hi = NULL,
  expansions = 0,
  series = "cosine",
  x.scl = setUnits(0, "m"),
  g.x.scl = 1,
  warn = TRUE,
  outputUnits = NULL
)
```

Arguments

data	An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function RdistDf() creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. is.RdistDf() checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
formula	A standard formula object. For example, <code>dist ~ 1</code> , <code>dist ~ covar1 + covar2</code> . The left-hand side (before <code>~</code>) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including <code>+ groupsize(<variable>)</code> in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.
likelihood	String specifying the likelihood to fit. Built-in likelihoods at present are "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp".
w.lo	Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If w.lo is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See help(unitHelpers) for assistance assigning units.

w.hi	Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in <code>dist</code> . This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., <code>NULL</code>), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If <code>w.hi</code> is specified, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in <code>series</code> to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., <code>expansions</code> is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).
series	If <code>expansions > 0</code> , this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
x.scl	The x coordinate (a distance) at which the detection function will be scaled. <code>g.x.scl</code> can be a distance or the string "max". When <code>x.scl</code> is specified (i.e., not 0 or "max"), it must have measurement units assigned. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
g.x.scl	Height of the distance function at coordinate <code>x</code> . The distance function will be scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$. If <code>g.x.scl</code> is not a data frame, it must be a numeric value (vector of length 1) between 0 and 1.
warn	A logical scalar specifying whether to issue an R warning if the estimation did not converge or if one or more parameter estimates are at their boundaries. For estimation, <code>warn</code> should generally be left at its default value of <code>TRUE</code> . When computing bootstrap confidence intervals, setting <code>warn = FALSE</code> turns off annoying warnings when an iteration does not converge. Regardless of <code>warn</code> , after completion all messages about convergence and boundary conditions are printed by <code>print.dfunc</code> , <code>print.abund</code> , and <code>plot.dfunc</code> .
outputUnits	A string specifying the symbolic measurement units for results. Valid units are listed in <code>units::valid_udunits()</code> . The strings for common distance symbolic units are: "m" - meters, "ft" - feet, "cm" - centimeters, "mm" - millimeters, "mi" - miles, "nmile" - nautical miles ("nm" is nano meters), "in" - inches, "yd" - yards, "km" - kilometers, "fathom" - fathoms, "chains" - chains, and "furlong" - furlongs. If <code>outputUnits</code> is unspecified (<code>NULL</code>), output units will be the same as those on distances in data.

Value

An object of class 'dfunc' with the following components:

- `par`: The vector of estimated parameter values. Length of this vector is the sum of the following:
 1. The number of columns of the design matrix. This equals the number of covariates in the distance function plus one for the intercept, assuming an intercept is included.
 2. The number of constant parameters in the distance function. Constant parameters are those not related to covariates. For example, the exponent 'k' parameter for hazard rate likelihood, or the mixing fraction 'p' for the oneStep likelihood. This can be zero.
 3. The number of expansion functions called for. This equals the input `expansions`.

- `loglik`: The maximized value of the log likelihood.
- `convergence`: The convergence code. This code is returned by the optimizing routine (e.g., `optim` or `nlm`). Values other than 0 indicate suspect convergence.
- `message`: If maximization did not converge (`convergence != 0`), this is the reason given by the optimizing routine.
- `varcovar`: The variance-covariance matrix for coefficients of the distance function, either estimated by the inverse of the fit's Hessian or by bootstrapping. If the likelihood is smooth (i.e., those listed by `Rdistance::differentiableLikelihoods()`), `Rdistance` initially estimates the variance-covariance matrix using the second derivative of the log likelihood surface at the final estimates, where second derivatives are estimated by numeric differentiation (in routine `secondDeriv()`). The variance-covariance matrix is re-set to NULL if the Hessian is not positive-definite. If bootstrap resampling has been performed (using `abundEstim()`), the variance-covariance matrix is re-estimated using the bootstrap values of parameters and automatically reset. Error estimates derived from bootstrapping are generally preferable to the asymptotic estimates, hence the automatic re-set.
- `limits`: A list containing the lower and upper limits of parameters.
- `evaluations`: The number of likelihood evaluations performed by the optimizer.
- `mf`: An R 'model frame' containing the detections (within the strip or circle) used in the fit, covariates specified in the formula, and groupsizes. Column 'dist' contains the observed distances. The intercept, if included in the model, is not included as a column in this model frame. (Test whether an intercept is included using `attr(terms(return$mf), "intercept")`). Column `offset(...)` contains group sizes associated with the values of `dist`. Name of the group size column is "offset(...)", not "groupsize(...)", so that group sizes can be treated offsets in other R routines. The `mf` component is a proper `model.frame` and contains both terms and contrasts attributes. This model frame contains only non-missing distances between `w.lo` and `w.hi`.
- `data`: The original nested data frame subset to information required to complete distance estimation. This data frame contains information on replication (i.e., rows are sites and are re-sampled during bootstrapping), missing distances, missing transect lengths, and distances outside the observation strip (below `w.lo` or above `w.hi`).
- `formula`: The distance function's formula.
- `dataName`: Name of the original nested data frame.
- `likelihood`: The name of the likelihood fitted to observation distances.
- `w.lo`: Left-truncation value used during the fit.
- `w.hi`: Right-truncation value used during the fit.
- `expansions`: The number of expansion terms.
- `series`: The type of expansion used during estimation. This is only relevant if `expansions > 0`.
- `x.scl`: The distance at which the function has been scaled to some value. This is the x at which $g(x) = g.x.scl$.
- `g.x.scl`: The height of the distance function at distance `x.scl`.
- `outputUnits`: A list of type `symbolic_units` containing the physical measurement units used during estimation.

- asymptoticSE: A logical scalar indication whether the variance-covariance matrix in component varcovar is asymptotic (TRUE; estimated from the Hessian) or bootstrap (FALSE; estimated by bootstrap resampling).
- optimizer: The optimizing routine used.
- call: The original function call.
- nCovars: The number of exogenous covariates fitted in the distance function. Does not include the intercept.
- LhoodType: The type of likelihood fitted. Currently, only 'parametric' types are fitted.
- runTime: Run time for model estimation.

dE.single

Estimate single-observer line-transect distance function

Description

Fits a detection function to off-transect distances collected by a single observer.

Usage

```
dE.single(
  data,
  formula,
  likelihood = "halfnorm",
  w.lo = setUnits(0, "m"),
  w.hi = NULL,
  expansions = 0,
  series = "cosine",
  x.scl = w.lo,
  g.x.scl = 1,
  warn = TRUE,
  outputUnits = NULL,
  asymptoticSE = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

data	An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function RdistDf() creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. is.RdistDf() checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
formula	A standard formula object. For example, <code>dist ~ 1</code> , <code>dist ~ covar1 + covar2</code> . The left-hand side (before <code>~</code>) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate

vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including `+ groupsize(<variable>)` in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.

likelihood	String specifying the likelihood to fit. Built-in likelihoods at present are "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp".
w.lo	Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If w.lo is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
w.hi	Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in dist. This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., NULL), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If w.hi is specified, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., expansions is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).
series	If <code>expansions > 0</code> , this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
x.scl	The x coordinate (a distance) at which the detection function will be scaled. <code>g.x.scl</code> can be a distance or the string "max". When <code>x.scl</code> is specified (i.e., not 0 or "max"), it must have measurement units assigned. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
g.x.scl	Height of the distance function at coordinate x. The distance function will be scaled so that <code>g(x.scl) = g.x.scl</code> . If <code>g.x.scl</code> is not a data frame, it must be a numeric value (vector of length 1) between 0 and 1.
warn	A logical scalar specifying whether to issue an R warning if the estimation did not converge or if one or more parameter estimates are at their boundaries. For estimation, warn should generally be left at its default value of TRUE. When computing bootstrap confidence intervals, setting <code>warn = FALSE</code> turns off annoying warnings when an iteration does not converge. Regardless of warn, after completion all messages about convergence and boundary conditions are printed by <code>print.dfunc</code> , <code>print.abund</code> , and <code>plot.dfunc</code> .
outputUnits	A string specifying the symbolic measurement units for results. Valid units are listed in <code>units::valid_udunits()</code> . The strings for common distance symbolic units are: "m" - meters, "ft" - feet, "cm" - centimeters, "mm" - millimeters, "mi" - miles, "nmile" - nautical miles ("nm" is nano meters), "in" - inches, "yd" - yards, "km" - kilometers, "fathom" - fathoms, "chains" - chains, and "furlong" - furlongs. If <code>outputUnits</code> is unspecified (NULL), output units will be the same as those on distances in data.
asymptoticSE	Logical variable for whether to calculate asymptotic standard errors. The default (TRUE) estimates an asymptotic variance-covariance matrix for parameters based on the likelihood's Hessian (2nd derivative). If maximization has

been performed by Nlminb or HookesJeeves, the asymptotic Hessian is estimated using numeric second derivatives of the likelihood at the maximum likelihood solution. If maximization was performed by Optim, the last Hessian of the maximization is returned by Optim and used (see `varcovarEstim()` and `secondDeriv()`). Asymptotic standard errors will not be estimated if `asymptoticSE = FALSE`. If not estimated, bootstrap iterations will run faster because the numeric Hessian, which is discarded during bootstrapping, will not be calculated every iteration.

Details

Optimization and estimation controls can be modified using `options()`. See `RdistanceControls()`.

Value

An object of class 'dfunc' with the following components:

- `par`: The vector of estimated parameter values. Length of this vector is the sum of the following:
 1. The number of columns of the design matrix. This equals the number of covariates in the distance function plus one for the intercept, assuming an intercept is included.
 2. The number of constant parameters in the distance function. Constant parameters are those not related to covariates. For example, the exponent 'k' parameter for hazard rate likelihood, or the mixing fraction 'p' for the oneStep likelihood. This can be zero.
 3. The number of expansion functions called for. This equals the input expansions.
- `loglik`: The maximized value of the log likelihood.
- `convergence`: The convergence code. This code is returned by the optimizing routine (e.g., `optim` or `nlminb`). Values other than 0 indicate suspect convergence.
- `message`: If maximization did not converge (`convergence != 0`), this is the reason given by the optimizing routine.
- `varcovar`: The variance-covariance matrix for coefficients of the distance function, either estimated by the inverse of the fit's Hessian or by bootstrapping. If the likelihood is smooth (i.e., those listed by `Rdistance::differentiableLikelihoods()`), `Rdistance` initially estimates the variance-covariance matrix using the second derivative of the log likelihood surface at the final estimates, where second derivatives are estimated by numeric differentiation (in routine `secondDeriv()`). The variance-covariance matrix is re-set to NULL if the Hessian is not positive-definite. If bootstrap resampling has been performed (using `abundEstim()`), the variance-covariance matrix is re-estimated using the bootstrap values of parameters and automatically reset. Error estimates derived from bootstrapping are generally preferable to the asymptotic estimates, hence the automatic re-set.
- `limits`: A list containing the lower and upper limits of parameters.
- `evaluations`: The number of likelihood evaluations performed by the optimizer.
- `mf`: An R 'model frame' containing the detections (within the strip or circle) used in the fit, covariates specified in the formula, and groupsizes. Column 'dist' contains the observed distances. The intercept, if included in the model, is not included as a column in this model frame. (Test whether an intercept is included using `attr(terms(return$mf), "intercept")`). Column `offset(...)` contains group sizes associated with the values of `dist`. Name of the group

size column is "offset(...)", not "groupsize(...)", so that group sizes can be treated offsets in other R routines. The `mf` component is a proper `model.frame` and contains both terms and contrasts attributes. This model frame contains only non-missing distances between `w.lo` and `w.hi`.

- `data`: The original nested data frame subset to information required to complete distance estimation. This data frame contains information on replication (i.e., rows are sites and are re-sampled during bootstrapping), missing distances, missing transect lengths, and distances outside the observation strip (below `w.lo` or above `w.hi`).
- `formula`: The distance function's formula.
- `dataName`: Name of the original nested data frame.
- `likelihood`: The name of the likelihood fitted to observation distances.
- `w.lo`: Left-truncation value used during the fit.
- `w.hi`: Right-truncation value used during the fit.
- `expansions`: The number of expansion terms.
- `series`: The type of expansion used during estimation. This is only relevant if `expansions > 0`.
- `x.scl`: The distance at which the function has been scaled to some value. This is the x at which $g(x) = g.x.scl$.
- `g.x.scl`: The height of the distance function at distance `x.scl`.
- `outputUnits`: A list of type `symbolic_units` containing the physical measurement units used during estimation.
- `asymptoticSE`: A logical scalar indication whether the variance-covariance matrix in component `varcovar` is asymptotic (TRUE; estimated from the Hessian) or bootstrap (FALSE; estimated by bootstrap resampling).
- `optimizer`: The optimizing routine used.
- `call`: The original function call.
- `nCovars`: The number of exogenous covariates fitted in the distance function. Does not include the intercept.
- `LhoodType`: The type of likelihood fitted. Currently, only 'parametric' types are fitted.
- `runTime`: Run time for model estimation.

Group Sizes

To specify non-unity group sizes, use `groupsize()` on the RHS of formula. When group sizes are not all 1, they must appear in a column of the 'detections' list-column of data. For example, `d ~ habitat + groupsize(number)` specifies distances in column `d`, one covariate named `habitat`, and that column `number` contains the number of individuals associated with each detection. If group sizes are not specified, all group sizes are assumed to be 1.

Contrasts

Factor contrasts in `Rdistance` are specified the same way as in `lm` or `glm`. By default, `Rdistance` uses contrasts in `getOption("contrasts")`. To change contrasts, use a statement like `options(contrasts = c(ordered = "contr.SAS", ordered = "contr.poly"))`. Or, to set contrasts for a specific factor in the input data frame, use `contrasts(df$A) <- "contr.sum"` or similar. See [contrasts\(\)](#) or the `contrasts.arg` of `model.matrix()`.

Transect types

Rdistance accommodates two kinds of transects: continuous and point. Detections can occur at any point on continuous transects. Rdistance calls these 'line-transects' even though routes are not necessarily a straight line. On point transects, detections occur at a series of stops (points). Rdistance calls these point-transects. Transects are the basic sampling unit in both cases. Rdistance assumes each row of data contains information from one transect. See [RdistDf\(\)](#) for more details.

Measurement Units

As of Rdistance version 3.0.0, measurement units are required on all physical distances. Requiring units ensures that internal calculations and results (e.g., ESW and abundance) are correct and that output units are clear. Physical distances are required on off-transect distances, radial distances, truncation distances (`w.lo`, unless it is zero; and `w.hi`, unless it is NULL), scale locations (`x.scl`, unless it is zero), line-transect lengths, and study area size. All units are 1-dimensional except those on study area, which are 2-dimensional.

Physical measurement units can vary. For example, off-transect distances can be meters ("m"), `w.hi` can be inches ("in"), and `w.lo` can be kilometers ("km"). Internally, all distances are converted to the units specified by `outputUnits` (or the units of input distances if `outputUnits` is NULL), and all output is reported in units of `outputUnits`. Valid conversions must exist between units or an error is thrown (e.g., meters cannot convert into hectares).

Measurement units can be assigned using one of Rdistance's unit helper routines (see `help(unitHelpers)`), Rdistance's [setUnits\(\)](#) function, or `units::set_units()`. See [units::valid_udunits\(\)](#) for a list of valid symbolic units.

If measurements are truly unit-less, or measurement units are unknown, set `options(Rdist_requireUnits = FALSE)`. This suppresses all unit checks and conversions. Users are on their own here and must make sure all inputs are scaled correctly so that internal computations are correct and output units are known.

References

Buckland, S.T., D.R. Anderson, K.P. Burnham, J.L. Laake, D.L. Borchers, and L. Thomas. (2001) *Introduction to distance sampling: estimating abundance of biological populations*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

See Also

[abundEstim\(\)](#), [autoDistSamp\(\)](#). Likelihood-specific help files (e.g., [halfnorm.like\(\)](#)).

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowDf)

dfunc <- dfuncEstim(data = sparrowDf
                    , formula = dist ~ 1)

dfunc
plot(dfunc)
```

dfuncEstim

*Estimate a distance-based detection function***Description**

Fits a detection function using maximum likelihood.

Usage

```
dfuncEstim(data, ...)
```

Arguments

- data** An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function `RdistDf()` creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. `is.RdistDf()` checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
- ...** Arguments passed on to `dE.single`, `dE.multi`
- formula** A standard formula object. For example, `dist ~ 1, dist ~ covar1 + covar2`. The left-hand side (before `~`) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including `+ groupsize(<variable>)` in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.
- likelihood** String specifying the likelihood to fit. Built-in likelihoods at present are "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp".
- w.lo** Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If `w.lo` is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See `help(unitHelpers)` for assistance assigning units.
- w.hi** Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in `dist`. This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., `NULL`), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If `w.hi` is specified, it must have measurement units. See `help(unitHelpers)` for assistance assigning units.
- expansions** A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., `expansions` is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of `formula` includes something other than 1).
- series** If `expansions > 0`, this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.

`x.scl` The x coordinate (a distance) at which the detection function will be scaled. `g.x.scl` can be a distance or the string "max". When `x.scl` is specified (i.e., not 0 or "max"), it must have measurement units assigned. See `help(unitHelpers)` for assistance assigning units.

`g.x.scl` Height of the distance function at coordinate x. The distance function will be scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$. If `g.x.scl` is not a data frame, it must be a numeric value (vector of length 1) between 0 and 1.

`warn` A logical scalar specifying whether to issue an R warning if the estimation did not converge or if one or more parameter estimates are at their boundaries. For estimation, `warn` should generally be left at its default value of TRUE. When computing bootstrap confidence intervals, setting `warn = FALSE` turns off annoying warnings when an iteration does not converge. Regardless of `warn`, after completion all messages about convergence and boundary conditions are printed by `print.dfunc`, `print.abund`, and `plot.dfunc`.

`outputUnits` A string specifying the symbolic measurement units for results. Valid units are listed in `units::valid_udunits()`. The strings for common distance symbolic units are: "m" - meters, "ft" - feet, "cm" - centimeters, "mm" - millimeters, "mi" - miles, "nmile" - nautical miles ("nm" is nano meters), "in" - inches, "yd" - yards, "km" - kilometers, "fathom" - fathoms, "chains" - chains, and "furlong" - furlongs. If `outputUnits` is unspecified (NULL), output units will be the same as those on distances in data.

Details

Optimization and estimation controls can be modified using `options()`. See `RdistanceControls()`.

Value

An object of class 'dfunc' with the following components:

- `par`: The vector of estimated parameter values. Length of this vector is the sum of the following:
 1. The number of columns of the design matrix. This equals the number of covariates in the distance function plus one for the intercept, assuming an intercept is included.
 2. The number of constant parameters in the distance function. Constant parameters are those not related to covariates. For example, the exponent 'k' parameter for hazard rate likelihood, or the mixing fraction 'p' for the oneStep likelihood. This can be zero.
 3. The number of expansion functions called for. This equals the input expansions.
- `loglik`: The maximized value of the log likelihood.
- `convergence`: The convergence code. This code is returned by the optimizing routine (e.g., `optim` or `nlm`). Values other than 0 indicate suspect convergence.
- `message`: If maximization did not converge (`convergence != 0`), this is the reason given by the optimizing routine.
- `varcovar`: The variance-covariance matrix for coefficients of the distance function, either estimated by the inverse of the fit's Hessian or by bootstrapping. If the likelihood is smooth

(i.e., those listed by `Rdistance::differentiableLikelihoods()`), `Rdistance` initially estimates the variance-covariance matrix using the second derivative of the log likelihood surface at the final estimates, where second derivatives are estimated by numeric differentiation (in routine `secondDeriv()`). The variance-covariance matrix is re-set to NULL if the Hessian is not positive-definite. If bootstrap resampling has been performed (using `abundEstim()`), the variance-covariance matrix is re-estimated using the bootstrap values of parameters and automatically reset. Error estimates derived from bootstrapping are generally preferable to the asymptotic estimates, hence the automatic re-set.

- `limits`: A list containing the lower and upper limits of parameters.
- `evaluations`: The number of likelihood evaluations performed by the optimizer.
- `mf`: An R 'model frame' containing the detections (within the strip or circle) used in the fit, covariates specified in the formula, and groupsizes. Column 'dist' contains the observed distances. The intercept, if included in the model, is not included as a column in this model frame. (Test whether an intercept is included using `attr(terms(return$mf), "intercept")`). Column `offset(...)` contains group sizes associated with the values of `dist`. Name of the group size column is "offset(...)", not "groupsize(...)", so that group sizes can be treated offsets in other R routines. The `mf` component is a proper `model.frame` and contains both terms and contrasts attributes. This model frame contains only non-missing distances between `w.lo` and `w.hi`.
- `data`: The original nested data frame subset to information required to complete distance estimation. This data frame contains information on replication (i.e., rows are sites and are re-sampled during bootstrapping), missing distances, missing transect lengths, and distances outside the observation strip (below `w.lo` or above `w.hi`).
- `formula`: The distance function's formula.
- `dataName`: Name of the original nested data frame.
- `likelihood`: The name of the likelihood fitted to observation distances.
- `w.lo`: Left-truncation value used during the fit.
- `w.hi`: Right-truncation value used during the fit.
- `expansions`: The number of expansion terms.
- `series`: The type of expansion used during estimation. This is only relevant if `expansions > 0`.
- `x.scl`: The distance at which the function has been scaled to some value. This is the x at which $g(x) = g.x.scl$.
- `g.x.scl`: The height of the distance function at distance `x.scl`.
- `outputUnits`: A list of type `symbolic_units` containing the physical measurement units used during estimation.
- `asymptoticSE`: A logical scalar indication whether the variance-covariance matrix in component `varcovar` is asymptotic (TRUE; estimated from the Hessian) or bootstrap (FALSE; estimated by bootstrap resampling).
- `optimizer`: The optimizing routine used.
- `call`: The original function call.
- `nCovars`: The number of exogenous covariates fitted in the distance function. Does not include the intercept.
- `LhoodType`: The type of likelihood fitted. Currently, only 'parametric' types are fitted.
- `runTime`: Run time for model estimation.

Group Sizes

To specify non-unity group sizes, use `groupsize()` on the RHS of formula. When group sizes are not all 1, they must appear in a column of the 'detections' list-column of data. For example, `d ~ habitat + groupsize(number)` specifies distances in column `d`, one covariate named `habitat`, and that column `number` contains the number of individuals associated with each detection. If group sizes are not specified, all group sizes are assumed to be 1.

Contrasts

Factor contrasts in `Rdistance` are specified the same way as in `lm` or `glm`. By default, `Rdistance` uses contrasts in `getOption("contrasts")`. To change contrasts, use a statement like `options(contrasts = c(ordered = "contr.SAS", ordered = "contr.poly"))`. Or, to set contrasts for a specific factor in the input data frame, use `contrasts(df$A) <- "contr.sum"` or similar. See [contrasts\(\)](#) or the `contrasts.arg` of [model.matrix\(\)](#).

Measurement Units

As of `Rdistance` version 3.0.0, measurement units are required on all physical distances. Requiring units ensures that internal calculations and results (e.g., ESW and abundance) are correct and that output units are clear. Physical distances are required on off-transect distances, radial distances, truncation distances (`w.lo`, unless it is zero; and `w.hi`, unless it is `NULL`), scale locations (`x.scl`, unless it is zero), line-transect lengths, and study area size. All units are 1-dimensional except those on study area, which are 2-dimensional.

Physical measurement units can vary. For example, off-transect distances can be meters ("m"), `w.hi` can be inches ("in"), and `w.lo` can be kilometers ("km"). Internally, all distances are converted to the units specified by `outputUnits` (or the units of input distances if `outputUnits` is `NULL`), and all output is reported in units of `outputUnits`. Valid conversions must exist between units or an error is thrown (e.g., meters cannot convert into hectares).

Measurement units can be assigned using one of `Rdistance`'s unit helper routines (see `help(unitHelpers)`), `Rdistance`'s [setUnits\(\)](#) function, or `units::set_units()`. See [units::valid_udunits\(\)](#) for a list of valid symbolic units.

If measurements are truly unit-less, or measurement units are unknown, set `options(Rdist_requireUnits = FALSE)`. This suppresses all unit checks and conversions. Users are on their own here and must make sure all inputs are scaled correctly so that internal computations are correct and output units are known.

References

Buckland, S.T., D.R. Anderson, K.P. Burnham, J.L. Laake, D.L. Borchers, and L. Thomas. (2001) *Introduction to distance sampling: estimating abundance of biological populations*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

See Also

[abundEstim\(\)](#), [autoDistSamp\(\)](#). Likelihood-specific help files (e.g., [halfnorm.like\(\)](#)).

Examples

```
# Sparrow line transect example
data(sparrowDetectionData)
data(sparrowSiteData)

sparrowDf <- RdistDf(sparrowSiteData, sparrowDetectionData)

dfunc <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf,
                    formula = dist ~ 1
                    )
summary(dfunc)

data(sparrowDfuncObserver) # pre-estimated object
## Not run:
# Commands that produced 'sparrowDfuncObserver'
sparrowDfuncObserver <- sparrowDf |>
  dfuncEstim(
    formula = dist ~ observer
  )

## End(Not run)
sparrowDfuncObserver
summary(sparrowDfuncObserver)
plot(sparrowDfuncObserver)
plot(sparrowDfuncObserver
     , newdata = data.frame(observer = c("obs1", "obs2", "obs3"
                                       , "obs4", "obs5")))

```

dfuncEstimErrMsg *dfuncEstim error messages*

Description

Utility function to produce error messages suitable for stop

Usage

```
dfuncEstimErrMsg(txt, attri)
```

Arguments

txt	A text string describing the error.
attri	An attribute to report.

Value

A string

differentiableLikelihoods

Differentiable likelihoods in Rdistance

Description

Return a character vector of likelihoods which are differentiable and hence the second derivative method can be used to estimate variance-covariance. Any likelihoods not in this list must use bootstrapping. This vector is polled in a few Rdistance routines, notably `parseModel` and `varcovarEstim`.

Usage

```
differentiableLikelihoods()
```

Value

A character vector of differentiable likelihoods.

distances

Observation distances

Description

Extract the observation distances (i.e., responses for an Rdistance model) from an Rdistance model frame.

Usage

```
distances(m1, na.rm = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>m1</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance-covariance matrix of the parameters.
<code>na.rm</code>	Whether to include or exclude missing distance values. In <code>m1</code> , the model list containing the model frame, missing values of the response (distance) are potentially present for two reasons: (1) they are outside the strip <code>w.lo</code> to <code>w.hi</code> , and (2) they are missing because the crew did not get a distance for that observation.
<code>...</code>	Ignored

Value

A vector containing observation distances contained in the Rdistance model frame.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
sparrowModel <- parseModel( sparrowDf, dist ~ observer )
stats::model.response(sparrowModel$mf)
distances(sparrowModel) # same, but future-proof
```

drawTransects	<i>Draw random transects given target length</i>
---------------	--

Description

Designs and draws random line transects inside one or more polygons. Can either be given a target *total* transect length or fixed spacing determined elsewhere. This is a convenience wrapper for [findSpacing\(\)](#), which computes spacing that yields the targeted length, then [makeLines\(\)](#), which actually places transects with a given spacing using a random start. Typically used after target line length has been estimated using [calcLineLength\(\)](#) or another method.

Usage

```
drawTransects(
  sPoly,
  targetLength,
  type = c("rectangular", "zigzag"),
  angle = units::set_units(0, "degrees"),
  spacing = NULL,
  baseline = NULL,
  combine = TRUE,
  target = c("total", "onEffort"),
  R = 1,
  minLength = units::set_units(100, "m"),
  tolerance = 0.01,
  nfmax = 50,
  minSolidity = 0.75,
  plot = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

sPoly	An sf or sfc object containing the polygon(s) (MULTIPOLYGON or POLYGON geometries) within which transects will be placed. sPoly must be projected to a planar coordinate system whose linear unit is meters (ideally an equal-area projection so areas are undistorted). Geographic coordinates are rejected.
-------	---

targetLength	The desired transect length across sPoly, interpreted according to target (total length by default). Must be a units length object, e.g. <code>units::set_units(1000, "km")</code> . Effort is allocated to polygons in proportion to area.
type	The transect layout, one of: • "rectangular" (the default): parallel, equally spaced straight lines. • "zigzag": a single continuous path that zig-zags between opposite edges of the polygon.
angle	Orientation of "rectangular" transects. Must have units convertible to 'degrees' (i.e., either 'degrees' or 'radians'). <code>angle = 0 \[^\]</code> (the default) produces North-South transects; <code>angle = 90 \[^\]</code> produces East-West transects. Ignored when <code>type = "zigzag"</code> .
spacing	Optional transect spacing, as a units length object. When supplied, computing the spacing to achieve targetLength in the study area is skipped and this spacing is used directly. When NULL (the default) the spacing to achieve approximately targetLength transects (including connectors) is computed using <code>findSpacing()</code> .
baseline	Optional sf/sfc LINESTRING giving the reference line for "zigzag" transects. Relevant only to "zigzag" transect. To construct zig-zag transects, the routine places points along the baseline spaced spacing apart (with a random start), then draws segments perpendicular to this baseline that span the polygon. The routine then connects every other point on the polygon boundary where the perpendicular segment intersects the boundary and this forms the zig-zag transect. Points along the boundary where "zigzag" transect legs meet are called "pivots". When NULL (the default) a straight baseline is estimated from the polygon (see Details). For "rectangular" transects the baseline does not influence construction (see angle). Supplying a baseline is only allowed when sPoly contains a single polygon. User supplied baselines are extended past the polygon's bounding box before use, so that pivots can be placed across the entire polygon.
combine	Logical controlling the geometry(ies) in the returned object. Both forms have the same onEffortLength and totalLength totals but differ in the geometry returned. • TRUE (the default): return the route actually flown, one continuous LINESTRING per polygon. Parallel legs for "rectangular" transects are joined by transit legs to form a back-and-forth type route. "zigzag" transects do not have transit legs between on-effort legs. The route is <i>not</i> clipped to the polygon, so off-effort transit legs can run outside the polygon. Sum of the returned lengths is totalLength. • FALSE: return one row per transect leg, with no transit legs. Sum of the returned lengths is onEffortLength in the returned object. Transit legs are clipped to the polygon so a leg that crosses a concavity will be broken into several pieces and is returned as a single MULTILINESTRING, so the returned geometries can be a mix of MULTILINESTRING and LINESTRING. When <code>combine == FALSE</code> and <code>type == "rectangular"</code>, the totalLength attribute <i>includes</i> the off-effort transit leg to the next on-effort leg, even though the transit leg is not returned in the geometry.

target	Character string selecting what targetLength measures: "total" (the default) is the total transect length including off-effort transit; "onEffort" is the on-effort survey length only. The two differ by the connectors between parallel legs for "rectangular" transects, and for "zigzag" transects only by whatever part of the continuous route a concavity pushes outside the polygon (nothing, when the polygon is convex). Use "onEffort" when targetLength comes from a survey-effort calculation such as <code>calcLineLength()</code> .
R	Number of independent random replicates to generate, passed to <code>makeLines()</code> . Defaults to 1. When $R > 1$ the return contains R realized transects, each with its own random start. Replicates are identified by the id column.
minLength	Minimum length for an individual transect leg to be counted, as a units length object. Legs shorter than minLength are dropped when measuring the realized length. Defaults to <code>units::set_units(100, "m")</code> .
tolerance	Relative tolerance on the total length, passed to <code>OSCARS::oscars()</code> as its objective tolerance fTol. Defaults to 0.01.
nfmax	Maximum number of objective-function evaluations for <code>OSCARS::oscars()</code> . Defaults to 50.
minSolidity	For "zigzag" transects with an estimated baseline, a warning is issued when a polygon's solidity (area divided by convex-hull area) falls below this value, because a single zigzag baseline may not cover a strongly concave polygon. The warning recommends splitting the polygon into more-convex pieces with <code>convexPartition()</code> and re-running <code>drawTransects()</code> on the pieces. Set to 0 to disable. Defaults to 0.75.
plot	Logical. If TRUE, the polygon(s) and baseline(s) are plotted on the current graphics device to show their relative orientation. Baselines are dashed blue lines. Spacing in call to <code>makeLines()</code> is distance along this line between transects. Rectangular type transects are perpendicular to this baseline. Defaults to FALSE.

Details

targetLength is the desired transect length, interpreted as either total length (including off-effort transit between legs) or on-effort length, according to target. The realized length will be as close to this value as the geometry and the (integer) number of transects allow. This amount of effort is allocated across polygons in proportion to area.

Value

An sf data frame of transect lines (geometries are either LINESTRING or MULTILINESTRING; a leg that clipping broke into pieces is one MULTILINESTRING row) with columns:

transectType	The layout used, "rectangular" or "zigzag".
id	Replicate label, e.g. "Replicate0001".
polygon	Integer index of the source polygon. Source polygons and indices are given in attribute "summary".
leg	Integer identifier of the leg within its polygon (1 when combine = TRUE, in which case the route is one long line with connectors).

spacing	The actual spacing used.
onEffortLength	On-effort (surveyed) length of the transect(s) represented on the row, i.e., the part inside the polygon. With units. Equals the length of the row's geometry when combine = FALSE.
totalLength	Total transect length of the segment(s) represented on the row. Total transect length includes the on-effort segment as well as the off-effort segment connecting to the next on-effort leg. With units.

A summary of the design is attached as an attribute `attr(x, "summary")`, a list with the layout type, the number of polygons `nPolygons`, the number of replicates `nReplicates`, `targetLength` (NA unless set by `drawTransects()`), and polygons. The polygons element is an sf LINESTRING data frame whose geometry column, `baseline`, holds each polygon's baseline, with columns `polygon` (integer index), `area` (with units), and `solidity` (measure of concavity; 1 = concave; <1 = less concave).

Author(s)

Trent McDonald.

See Also

`findSpacing()` and `makeLines()` for the two individual steps; `calcLineLength()` for estimating `targetLength`.

Examples

```
# A simple tapered survey polygon (Alaska Albers, meters).
poly <- sf::st_sf(geometry = sf::st_sfc(sf::st_polygon(list(rbind(
  c(0, 0), c(60000, 0), c(60000, 25000), c(0, 10000), c(0, 0)))),
  crs = 3338))

# Five replicate zigzag designs for a 150 km survey. Totals vary by
# replicate, so summarize the output columns grouped by the replicate id.
set.seed(439752)
zz <- drawTransects(poly, units::set_units(150, "km"), type = "zigzag", R = 5)
tgt <- attr(zz, "summary")$targetLength
zz |>
  sf::st_drop_geometry() |>
  dplyr::group_by(id) |>
  dplyr::summarize(onEffortLength = sum(onEffortLength),
                  totalLength    = sum(totalLength),
                  pctOfTarget     = totalLength / tgt)

# Realistic polygons (exceeds CRAN time limits).

data(exampleSurveyPoly)

# Workflow 1: Sample size driven
trgLen = calcLineLength(sPoly = exampleSurveyPoly[1,]
  , N = 1200
  , p = 0.5
```

```

      , w = units::set_units(200, "m")
      , targetGroups = 300
      , avgGroupSize = 2.5
    )
transects <- drawTransects(sPoly = exampleSurveyPoly[1,]
      , targetLength = trgLeng
      , target = "onEffort"
    )

# Workflow 2: Budget driven
costPer = units::set_units(1000, "1/hr") # dollars/hr for aircraft
budget = 4000 # dollars in budget
speed = units::set_units(85, "miles/hr")
transects <- drawTransects(sPoly = exampleSurveyPoly$geometry[1]
      , targetLength = speed * budget / costPer
      , target = "total"
    )

many <- drawTransects(exampleSurveyPoly, units::set_units(300, "km"),
      type = "zigzag")

```

EDR

*Effective Detection Radius (EDR) for point transects***Description**

Computes Effective Detection Radius (EDR) for estimated detection functions on point transects. See [ESW\(\)](#) is for line transects.

Usage

```
EDR(object, newdata = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to dfuncEstim() .
newdata	A data frame containing new values of the covariates at which to evaluate the distance functions. If newdata is NULL, distance functions are evaluated at values of the observed covariates and results in one prediction per distance or transect (see parameter type). If newdata is not NULL and the model does not contains covariates, this routine returns one prediction for each row in newdata, but columns and values in newdata are ignored.

Details

Effective Detection Radius is the integral under the detection function times distance. I.e.,

$$EDR = \int_{w.lo}^{w.hi} xg(x)dx,$$

where $g(x)$ is the distance function scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$ and $w.lo$ and $w.hi$ are the lower and upper truncation limits.

Value

If newdata is present, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in newdata. Length of return in this case is the number of rows in newdata. If newdata is NULL, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in object. Length of return in this case is the number of detected groups. The returned vector has measurement units, i.e., object\$outputUnits.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [ESW\(\)](#), [effectiveDistance\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Load example thrasher data (point transect survey type)
data(thrasherDf)

# Fit half-normal detection function
dfunc <- thrasherDf |> dfuncEstim(formula=dist~bare)

# Compute effective detection radius (EDR)
EDR(dfunc) # vector length 192
effectiveDistance(dfunc) # same
EDR(dfunc, newdata = data.frame(bare=30)) # vector length 1
```

effectiveDistance	<i>Effective sampling distances</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------------

Description

Computes Effective Strip Width (ESW) for line-transect detection functions, or the analogous Effective Detection Radius (EDR) for point-transect detection functions.

Usage

```
effectiveDistance(object, newdata = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
newdata	A data frame containing new values for covariates at which either ESW's or EDR's will be computed. If NULL and object contains covariates, the covariates stored in object are used (like <code>predict.lm()</code>). If not NULL, covariate values in newdata are used. See Value section for more information.

Details

Serves as a wrapper for `ESW()` and `EDR()`.

Effective distances are areas under scaled distance functions (i.e., area under $g(x)$). Areas are exact for functions whose integral is known (e.g., `negexp`). Numeric integration is used for all others.

Value

If newdata is present, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in newdata. Length of return in this case is the number of rows in newdata. If newdata is NULL, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in object. Length of return in this case is the number of detected groups. The returned vector has measurement units, i.e., `object$outputUnits`.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `ESW()`, `EDR()`, `integrateNumeric()`, `integrateNegexplines()`

effort	<i>Effort information</i>
--------	---------------------------

Description

Extract effort information from an Rdistance data frame. Effort is length of line-transects or number of points on point-transects.

Usage

`effort(x, ...)`

Arguments

x	Either an estimated distance function, output by <code>dfuncEstim</code> , or an Rdistance nested data frame, output by <code>RdistDf</code> .
...	Ignored

Value

A vector containing effort. If line-transects, return is length of transects, with units. If point-transects, return is number of points (integers, no units). Vector length is number of transects. If input is not an RdistDf or estimated distance function, return is NULL.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
effort(sparrowDf)
fit <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf, dist ~ 1)
effort(fit)
```

errDataUnk	<i>Unknown error message</i>
------------	------------------------------

Description

Constructs a string stating what is "unknown" that is suitable for use in warning and error functions.

Usage

```
errDataUnk(txt, attri)
```

Arguments

txt	Text. The "unknown" we are looking for.
attri	Attribute description we are looking for.

Value

A descriptive string, suitable for warning or error.

estimateN	<i>Abundance point estimates</i>
-----------	----------------------------------

Description

Estimate abundance from an Rdistance fitted model. This function is called internally by abundEstim. Most users will call abundEstim to estimate abundance unless they are running simulations or bootstrapping.

Usage

```
estimateN(object, area = NULL, propUnitSurveyed = 1)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
area	A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If area is NULL (the default), area will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If area is not NULL, it must have measurement units assigned by the <code>units</code> package. The units on area must be convertible to squared output units. Units on area must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on area must be convertible to "foo^2" by the <code>units</code> package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable.
propUnitSurveyed	A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, <code>propUnitSurveyed = 1</code> . If only a single side of line transects were observed, set <code>propUnitSurveyed = 0.5</code> . For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in <code>x</code> .

Details

The abundance estimate for line-transect surveys (if no covariates are included in the detection function and both sides of the transect are observed) is

$$N = \frac{n(A)}{2(ESW)(L)}$$

where n is total number of sighted individuals (i.e., `sum(groupSizes(dfunc))`), L is the total length of surveyed transect (i.e., `sum(effort(dfunc))`), and ESW is effective strip width computed from the estimated distance function (i.e., `ESW(dfunc)`). If only one side of transects were observed, the "2" in the denominator is not present (or, replaced with a "1").

The abundance estimate for point transect surveys (if no covariates are included) is

$$N = \frac{n(A)}{\pi(ESR^2)(P)}$$

where n is total number of sighted individuals (i.e., `sum(groupSizes(dfunc))`), P is the total number of surveyed points (i.e., `sum(effort(dfunc))`), and ESR is effective search radius computed from the estimated distance function (i.e., `ESR(dfunc)`).

This routine, `abundEstim`, estimates abundance on the entire study area. Site-specific density estimates are computed by `predict(x, type = "density")`, which returns a tibble containing density and abundance on the area surveyed by every transect.

Value

A list containing the following components:

density	Estimated density in the surveyed area.
---------	---

abundance	Estimated abundance on the study area. Equals density if area is not specified.
n.groups	The number of detected groups (not individuals, unless all group sizes = 1).
n.seen	The number of individuals (sum of group sizes).
area	Total area of inference. Study area size
surveyedUnits	Number of surveyed sites. This is total transect length for line-transects or number of points for point-transects. This total transect length does not include transects with missing lengths.
propUnitSurveyed	Proportion of the standard survey unit that was observed
avg.group.size	Average group size on non-NA transects
w	Strip width.
pDetection	Probability of detection.

For line-transects that do not involve covariates, `object$density` is `object$n.seen / (2 * propUnitSurveyed * object$w * object$pDetection * object$surveyedUnits)`

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [abundEstim\(\)](#)

ESW

Effective Strip Width (ESW) for line transects

Description

Returns effective strip width (ESW) for line-transect detection functions. See [EDR\(\)](#) is for point transects.

Usage

```
ESW(object, newdata = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to dfuncEstim() .
newdata	A data frame containing new values for covariates at which either ESW's or EDR's will be computed. If NULL and object contains covariates, the covariates stored in object are used (like predict.lm()). If not NULL, covariate values in newdata are used. See Value section for more information.

Details

ESW is area under a scaled distance function between its left-truncation limit (`obj$w.lo`) and its right-truncation limit (`obj$w.hi`). I.e.,

$$ESW = \int_{w.lo}^{w.hi} g(x)dx,$$

where $g(x)$ is the distance function scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$ and $w.lo$ and $w.hi$ are the lower and upper truncation limits.

If detection does not decline with distance, the detection function is flat (horizontal), and area under the detection function is $g(0)(w.hi - w.lo)$. If, in this case, $g(0) = 1$, effective sampling distance is the half-width of the surveys, $(w.hi - w.lo)$

Value

If `newdata` is present, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in `newdata`. Length of return in this case is the number of rows in `newdata`. If `newdata` is `NULL`, the returned value is a vector of effective sampling distances associated with covariate values in `object`. Length of return in this case is the number of detected groups. The returned vector has measurement units, i.e., `object$outputUnits`.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [EDR\(\)](#), [effectiveDistance\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(sparrowDfuncObserver)

ESW(sparrowDfuncObserver) # vector length 356 = number of groups
ESW(sparrowDfuncObserver, newdata = data.frame(observer =
  c("obs2", "obs4"))) # vector length 2
```

exampleSurveyPoly

Example complex survey polygons

Description

Two markedly non-convex survey polygons used to illustrate transect placement with [makeLines\(\)](#) and [drawTransects\(\)](#), including estimation of a "zigzag" baseline for a bent, elongated shape, the solidity warning that suggests splitting such shapes with [convexPartition\(\)](#), and the allocation of effort across multiple polygons. The polygons are arc-shaped coastal survey strata with solidities (area divided by convex-hull area) of about 0.66 and 0.80.

Format

An sf data frame with two rows, each a POLYGON in the geometry column geometry. Coordinates are projected in NAD83 / Alaska Albers (EPSG:3338), an equal-area projection, so the linear unit is meters and polygon areas are undistorted (about 367 and 325 square kilometers).

Source

The first two rows of the strata2_CI_surveyPolys object from the Aleutian Tern survey design work (McDonald Data Sciences / U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service), reduced to their survey-polygon geometries and reprojected from Web Mercator to Alaska Albers equal-area.

See Also

[makeLines\(\)](#), [drawTransects\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(exampleSurveyPoly)
plot(sf::st_geometry(exampleSurveyPoly))
```

expandW

Domain of expansion factors

Description

The domain to which expansion factors are applied varies by likelihood. When the domain varies, it depends on parameter values. For example, oneStep expansion factors are applied between 0 and the likelihood's first parameter (θ), which varies by covariates. This function computes the likelihood-specific expansion domains

Usage

```
expandW(ml, params, k)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
params	A matrix of likelihood parameters. Size is (number of distances) X ((number of cases) + (number of non-covariate parameter)).
k	The number of cases.

Value

A plain vector of length k containing expansion domains, with units.

expansionTerms	<i>Distance function expansion terms</i>
----------------	--

Description

Compute "expansion" terms that modify the shape of a base distance function.

Usage

```
expansionTerms(a, d, series, nexp, w)
```

Arguments

a	A vector or matrix of (estimated) coefficients. a has length $p + \text{nexp}$ (if a vector) or dimension $(k, p + \text{nexp})$, where p is the number of canonical parameters in the likelihood and k is the number of 'cases' (coefficient vectors = $\text{nrow}(a)$) to evaluate. The first p elements of a, or the first p columns if a is a matrix, are ignored. I.e., Expansion term coefficients are the last nexp elements or columns of a.
d	A vector or 1-column matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion terms. d should be distances above $w.\text{lo}$, i.e., distances - $w.\text{lo}$. Parameters d and w must have compatible measurement units.
series	If $\text{expansions} > 0$, this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
nexp	Number of expansion terms. Integer from 0 to 5.
w	A vector specifying strip width for every 'case' in a. Vector must have length $\text{length}(a)$ or $\text{nrow}(a)$. In general, this is constant vector containing the range of sighting distances, i.e., $\text{rep}(w.\text{hi} - w.\text{lo}, \text{nrow}(a))$. But, for some likelihoods (e.g., 'oneStep') this vector allows the user to restrict application of the expansion terms to less than the full range of distances. For the 'oneStep' likelihood, expansion terms are only applied between 0 and Θ , the boundary of the two uniforms, which varies by 'case' when covariates are present. Parameters d and w must have compatible measurement units.

Details

Expansion terms modify the base likelihood function and are used to incorporate "wiggle". The modified distance function is, $\text{key} * \text{expTerms}$ where key is a vector of values in the base likelihood function (e.g., $\text{halfnorm.like}()\$L.\text{unscaled}$) and expTerms is the matrix returned by this routine. In equation form,

$$f(x_i|\beta, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m) = f(x_i|\beta) \left(1 + \sum_{k=1}^m a_k h_k(x_i/w) \right).$$

, where m = the the number of expansions (nexp), $h_j(x)$ are expansion terms for distance x , and $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m$ are the (estimated) expansion term coefficients.

Value

If nexp equals 0, 1 is returned. If nexp is greater than 0, a matrix of size $n \times k$ containing expansion terms, where $n = \text{length}(d)$ and $k = \text{nrow}(a)$. The expansion series associated with row j of a are in column j of the return. i.e., element (i, j) of the return is

$$1 + \sum_{k=1}^m a_{jk} h_k(x_i/w).$$

Examples

```
a1 <- c(log(40), 0.5, -.5)
a2 <- c(log(40), 0.25, -.5)
dists <- seq(0, 100, length = 100) %m%.
w = 100 %m%.

expTerms1 <- expansionTerms(a1, dists, "cosine", 2, w)
expTerms2 <- expansionTerms(a2, dists, "cosine", 2, w)
plot(dists, expTerms2, ylim = c(0,2.5))
points(dists, expTerms1, pch = 16)

# Same as above
a <- rbind(a1, a2)
w <- rep(w, nrow(a))
expTerms <- expansionTerms(a, dists, "cosine", 2, w)
matlines(dists, expTerms, lwd=2, col=c("red", "blue"), lty=1)

# Showing key and expansions
key <- halfnorm.like(log(40), dists, matrix(1,length(dists),1))$L.unscaled
plot(dists, key, type = "l", col = "blue", ylim=c(0,1.5))
lines(dists, key * expTerms1, col = "red")
lines(dists, key * expTerms2, col = "purple")
```

findSpacing

findSpacing - Transect spacing for a target survey length

Description

Compute the approximate transect spacing that yields a target *total* transect length inside one or more polygons. The spacing is found by minimizing the difference between the realized total length and targetLength with `OSCARS::oscars()`. A single spacing is returned and, applied uniformly, distributes effort across polygons in proportion to their area. `findSpacing()` performs the calculation; `makeLines()` does the random placement; `drawTransects()` chains the two.

Usage

```
findSpacing(
  sPoly,
  targetLength,
  type = c("rectangular", "zigzag"),
  angle = units::set_units(0, "degrees"),
  baseline = NULL,
  combine = TRUE,
  target = c("total", "onEffort"),
  minLength = units::set_units(100, "m"),
  tolerance = 0.01,
  nfmax = 50,
  minSolidity = 0.75,
  plot = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

sPoly	An sf or sfc object containing the polygon(s) (MULTIPOLYGON or POLYGON geometries) within which transects will be placed. sPoly must be projected to a planar coordinate system whose linear unit is meters (ideally an equal-area projection so areas are undistorted). Geographic coordinates are rejected.
targetLength	The desired transect length across sPoly, interpreted according to target (total length by default). Must be a units length object, e.g. units::set_units(1000, "km"). Effort is allocated to polygons in proportion to area.
type	The transect layout, one of: "rectangular" (the default): parallel, equally spaced straight lines. "zigzag": a single continuous path that zig-zags between opposite edges of the polygon.
angle	Orientation of "rectangular" transects. Must have units convertible to 'degrees' (i.e., either 'degrees' or 'radians'). angle = 0 \[^\] (the default) produces North-South transects; angle = 90 \[^\] produces East-West transects. Ignored when type = "zigzag".
baseline	Optional sf/sfc LINESTRING giving the reference line for "zigzag" transects. Relevant only to "zigzag" transect. To construct zig-zag transects, the routine places points along the baseline spaced spacing apart (with a random start), then draws segments perpendicular to this baseline that span the polygon. The routine then connects every other point on the polygon boundary where the perpendicular segment intersects the boundary and this forms the zig-zag transect. Points along the boundary where "zigzag" transect legs meet are called "pivots". When NULL (the default) a straight baseline is estimated from the polygon (see Details). For "rectangular" transects the baseline does not influence construction (see angle). Supplying a baseline is only allowed when sPoly contains a single polygon. User supplied baselines are extended past the polygon's bounding box before use, so that pivots can be placed across the entire polygon.

combine	Logical controlling the geometry(ies) in the returned object. Both forms have the same onEffortLength and totalLength totals but differ in the geometry returned. • TRUE (the default): return the route actually flown, one continuous LINESTRING per polygon. Parallel legs for "rectangular" transects are joined by transit legs to form a back-and-forth type route. "zigzag" transects do not have transit legs between on-effort legs. The route is <i>not</i> clipped to the polygon, so off-effort transit legs can run outside the polygon. Sum of the returned lengths is totalLength. • FALSE: return one row per transect leg, with no transit legs. Sum of the returned lengths is onEffortLength in the returned object. Transit legs are clipped to the polygon so a leg that crosses a concavity will be broken into several pieces and is returned as a single MULTILINESTRING, so the returned geometries can be a mix of MULTILINESTRING and LINESTRING. When combine == FALSE and type == "rectangular", the totalLength attribute <i>includes</i> the off-effort transit leg to the next on-effort leg, even though the transit leg is not returned in the geometry.
target	Character string selecting what targetLength measures: "total" (the default) is the total transect length including off-effort transit; "onEffort" is the on-effort survey length only. The two differ by the connectors between parallel legs for "rectangular" transects, and for "zigzag" transects only by whatever part of the continuous route a concavity pushes outside the polygon (nothing, when the polygon is convex). Use "onEffort" when targetLength comes from a survey-effort calculation such as <code>calcLineLength()</code>.
minLength	Minimum length for an individual transect leg to be counted, as a units length object. Legs shorter than minLength are dropped when measuring the realized length. Defaults to <code>units::set_units(100, "m")</code>.
tolerance	Relative tolerance on the total length, passed to <code>OSCARS::oscars()</code> as its objective tolerance fTol. Defaults to 0.01.
nfmax	Maximum number of objective-function evaluations for <code>OSCARS::oscars()</code>. Defaults to 50.
minSolidity	For "zigzag" transects with an estimated baseline, a warning is issued when a polygon's solidity (area divided by convex-hull area) falls below this value. The warning recommends splitting the polygon with <code>convexPartition()</code> and re-running on the pieces. Set to 0 to disable. Defaults to 0.75.
plot	Logical. If TRUE, the polygon(s) and baseline(s) are plotted on the current graphics device to show their relative orientation. Baselines are dashed blue lines. Spacing in call to <code>makeLines()</code> is distance along this line between transects. Rectangular type transects are perpendicular to this baseline. Defaults to FALSE.

Details

The returned spacing is the distance between adjacent transects: the perpendicular distance between the parallel lines for "rectangular" transects, and the baseline distance between adjacent crossings of the baseline for "zigzag" transects (one complete zig-zag cycle covers twice that). Because a smaller spacing packs more transect into each polygon, the total length is a decreasing function of spacing, which `OSCARS::oscars()` searches over a single scalar.

Realized zigzag length depends on the random start: on where the pivots fall along the baseline, and on which side of the baseline the route starts, which decides whether a given station gets the far pivot or the near one. On a polygon that is not symmetric about its baseline both matter, so the objective averages the length over several starts of each kind and targets the expectation. The single random draw taken later by `makeLines()` therefore lands near, but not exactly on, `targetLength`.

Value

A units length object: the approximate spacing that yields `targetLength`. Pass it to `makeLines()` to place transects.

See Also

`makeLines()`, `drawTransects()`, `OSCARS::oscars()`.

Examples

```
poly <- sf::st_sf(geometry = sf::st_sfc(sf::st_polygon(list(rbind(
  c(0, 0), c(60000, 0), c(60000, 25000), c(0, 10000), c(0, 0)))),
  crs = 3338))
findSpacing(poly, units::set_units(150, "km"), type = "zigzag")
```

Gamma.like	<i>Gamma distance function</i>
------------	--------------------------------

Description

Evaluate the gamma distance function for sighting distances, potentially including covariates and expansion terms

Usage

```
Gamma.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

- a A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If `a` is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in `a` are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
- dist A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
- covars A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument `dist`.

w.hi A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as halfnorm, negexp, and hazrate), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as oneStep and uniform).

Details

The Rdistance implementation of a Gamma distance function follows Becker and Quang (2009). Rdistance's Gamma distance function is

$$f(d|\alpha, \sigma) = \left(\frac{d}{m}\right)^{\alpha-1} e^{-(d-m)/\sigma},$$

where α is the **shape** parameter, σ is the **scale** parameter, and $m = (\alpha - 1)\sigma$. m is the mode of the Gamma function, and in Rdistance it's scaled to have a maximum of 1.0 at m . The **scale** parameter is a function of the shape parameter *and* sighting covariates, i.e.,

$$\sigma = k[\exp(x'\beta)],$$

where x is a vector of covariate values associated with distance d (i.e., a row of covars), β is a vector of the first q (=ncol(covars)) values of the first argument of the function (a), and k is a function of the shape parameter, i.e.,

$$k = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)} \left(\frac{a-1}{e^1}\right)^{a-1}.$$

The shape parameter α is the $q + 1$ -st value in the function's first argument and is constrained to be strictly greater than 1.0.

See Examples for use of [GammaReparam\(\)](#) to compute α and σ from fitted object coefficients.

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ (n = length dist; k = number of cases = nrow(a)) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in dist. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of a). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between w.lo and w.hi to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; b = number of canonical parameters in the likelihood; k = number of cases). Rows correspond to distances in dist. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of a), and pages correspond to cases (rows of a).

References

Becker, E. F., and P. X. Quang, 2009. *A Gamma-Shaped Detection Function for Line-Transect Surveys with Mark-Recapture and Covariate Data*. Journal of Agricultural, Biological, and Environmental Statistics 14(2):207-223.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [abundEstim\(\)](#), other <likelihood>.like functions

Examples

```
x <- seq(0, 100, length=100)
covars <- matrix(1,100,1)

# Plots showing changes in scale
plot(x, Gamma.like(c(log(20),2.5), x, covars)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(x, Gamma.like(c(log(40),2.5), x, covars)$L.unscaled, col="blue")

# Plots showing changes in shape
plot(x, Gamma.like(c(log(20),1.5), x, covars)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(x, Gamma.like(c(log(20),2.5), x, covars)$L.unscaled, col="blue")
lines(x, Gamma.like(c(log(20),4.5), x, covars)$L.unscaled, col="green")

# Roll-your-own plot, showing "re-parameterization":
# Assume fitted object coefficients are c(log(20), 4.5)
fit <- list(par = c(log(20), 4.5))

# The distance function is then,
gammaPar <- GammaReparam( scl = exp(fit$par[1])
                          , shp = fit$par[2] ) # returns scl=k*exp(x'B)

scl <- gammaPar$scl
shp <- gammaPar$shp
m <- (shp - 1) * scl
g <- (x / m)^(shp - 1) * exp(-(x - m) / scl) # distance function
lines(x, g, lwd = 3, lty = 2, col="green3")
```

Gamma.start.limits	<i>Gamma.start.limits - Start and limit values for Gamma distance function</i>
--------------------	--

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the Gamma distance function.

Usage

```
Gamma.start.limits(m1)
```

Arguments

m1	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects'
----	--

are typically produced by calls to `dfuncEstim()`. 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A list containing the following components

- `start` Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
- `lowlimit` Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
- `uplimit` Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
- `names` Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

GammaModes	<i>Modes of the Gamma distribution</i>
------------	--

Description

Compute mode (i.e., maximum) of Rdistance's version of the gamma distribution.

Usage

GammaModes(params)

Arguments

- `params` A matrix of Gamma distribution parameters. First column is the scale parameter, and is a function of covariates. Second column is the shape parameter.

Value

A vector of the locations of the gamma modes associated with each row in the `params` matrix.

GammaReparam

*Reparameterize Gamma parameters for use in dgamma***Description**

Transform Rdistance's version of the Gamma distribution parameters, which is that of Becker and Quan, into the version for use in `R::dgamma()` and elsewhere.

Usage

```
GammaReparam(shp, scl)
```

Arguments

`shp` Rdistance's shape parameter
`scl` Rdistance's scale parameter. This parameter is related to covariates via $\exp(x'B)$.

Value

A list with components `$shp` and `$scl`, which are the re-parameterized versions of the input parameters suitable for us in `R::dgamma()`.

See Also

'Details' section of [Gamma.like\(\)](#) for Rdistance's Gamma distribution

Examples

```
# Rdistance Gamma parameters
Rd.scl <- 50 # must be >0
Rd.shp <- 1.5 # must be >1

# dgamma parameters
dgParams <- GammaReparam(Rd.shp, Rd.scl)
dgParams

# Gamma distribution with (Rd.scl, Rd.shp) from 0 to 100
curve(dgamma(x, shape=dgParams$shp, scale = dgParams$scl)
      , from = 0
      , to = 100)

# Rdistance's version: same curve but scaled so maximum = 1
x <- seq(0, 100, length = 200)
scl <- dgParams$scl
shp <- dgParams$shp
m <- (shp - 1) * scl
g <- (x / m)^(shp - 1) * exp(-(x - m) / scl) # distance function
plot(x, g, type = "l")
```

getNCores	<i>Set number of cores</i>
-----------	----------------------------

Description

Set the number of cores for parallel operations. Also convert integer 'parallel' to TRUE-FALSE for ease.

Usage

```
getNCores(parallel)
```

Arguments

parallel	A logical scalar, or a positive integer; ignored unless confidence intervals are requested (i.e., !is.null(ci)). If TRUE, bootstrap iterations are run in parallel using the maximum number of CPU cores minus 1. The maximum number of CPU cores is reported by parallel::detectCores(). If a positive integer (1 <= parallel <= maximum cores), bootstrap iterations are performed in parallel on that many cores. If FALSE, bootstrap iterations are performed in series, and progress will be shown if showProgress == TRUE. Parameters showProgress and plot.bs are ignored when operating in parallel.
----------	--

Details

Input parallel <= 0 is converted to 1. Input parallel > maxCores is converted to maxCores. If input parallel is numeric, is first converted to integer by rounding down.

Value

A list with components \$parallel and \$cores. \$parallel is logical, T for parallel operations, F o.w. \$cores is the number of cores to use during parallel operations. \$cores is integer in the range 1, 2, ..., max(Available cores).

groupSizes	<i>Group Sizes</i>
------------	--------------------

Description

Extract the group size information from an Rdistance model frame.

Usage

```
groupSizes(ml, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>ml</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
<code>...</code>	Ignored

Value

A vector containing group sizes contained in the Rdistance model frame or fitted object.

Examples

```
data("sparrowDf")
sparrowModel <- parseModel( sparrowDf, dist ~ observer )
stats::model.offset(sparrowModel$mf)
groupSizes(sparrowModel) # same, but future-proof

sparrowModel <- parseModel( sparrowDf
                           , dist ~ observer + groupsize(groupsize) )
groupSizes(sparrowModel)
```

gxEstim

Estimate $g(0)$ or $g(x)$

Description

Estimate distance function scaling factor , $g(0)$ or $g(x)$, for a specified distance function.

Usage

```
gxEstim(fit)
```

Arguments

<code>fit</code>	An estimated dfunc object. See <code>dfuncEstim</code> .
------------------	--

Details

This routine scales sightability such that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$, where $g()$ is the sightability function. Specification of $x.scl$ and $g.x.scl$ covers several estimation cases:

1. **$g(0) = 1$** : (the default) Inputs are $x.scl = 0$, $g.x.scl = 1$. If $w.lo > 0$, $x.scl$ will be set to $w.lo$ so technically this case is $g(w.lo) = 1$.
2. **User supplied probability at specified distance**: Inputs are $x.scl =$ a number greater than or equal to $w.lo$, $g.x.scl =$ a number between 0 and 1. This case covers situations where sightability on the transect (distance 0) is not perfect. This case assumes researchers have an independent estimate of sightability at distance $x.scl$ off the transect. For example, researchers could be using multiple observers to estimate that sightability at distance $x.scl$ is $g.x.scl$.
3. **Maximum sightability specified**: Inputs are $x.scl = "max"$, $g.x.scl =$ a number between 0 and 1. In this case, $g()$ is scaled such that its maximum value is $g.x.scl$. This routine computes the distance at which $g()$ is maximum, sets $g()$'s height there to $g.x.scl$, and returns $x.max$ where $x.max$ is the distance at which g is maximized. This case covers the common aerial survey situation where maximum sightability is slightly off the transect, but the distance at which the maximum occurs is unknown.
4. **Double observer system**: Inputs are $x.scl = "max"$, $g.x.scl = \langle \text{a data frame} \rangle$. In this case, $g(x) = h$, where x is the distance that maximizes g and h is the height of $g()$ at x computed from the double observer data frame (see below for structure of the double observer data frame).
5. **Distance of independence specified, height computed from double observer system**: Inputs are $x.scl =$ a number greater than or equal to $w.lo$, $g.x.scl =$ a data frame. In this case, $g(x.scl) = h$, where h is computed from the double observer data frame (see below for structure of the double observer data frame).

When $x.scl$, $g.x.scl$, or `observer` are NULL, the routine will look for and use `$call.x.scl`, or `$call.g.x.scl`, or `$call.observer` components of the `fit` object for whichever of these three parameters is missing. Later, different values can be specified in a direct call to `F.gx.estim` without having to re-estimate the distance function. Because of this feature, the default values in `dfuncEstim` are $x.scl = 0$ and $g.x.scl = 1$ and `observer = "both"`.

Value

A list comprised of the following components:

<code>x.scl</code>	The value of x (distance) at which $g()$ is evaluated.
<code>comp2</code>	The estimated value of $g()$ when evaluated at $x.scl$.

Structure of the double observer data frame

When $g.x.scl$ is a data frame, it is assumed to contain the components `$obsby.1` and `$obsby.2` (no flexibility on names). Each row in the data frame contains data from one sighted target. The `$obsby.1` and `$obsby.2` components are TRUE/FALSE (logical) vectors indicating whether observer 1 (`obsby.1`) or observer 2 (`obsby.2`) spotted the target.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
fit <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf, dist ~ groupsize(groupsize))
gxEstim(fit)

fit <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf, dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
                  , x.scl = 50 %m%.
                  , g.x.scl = 0.75)
gxEstim(fit)
plot(fit)
abline(h=0.75)
abline(v=50%m%.)
```

halfnorm.like	<i>Half-normal distance function</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------

Description

Evaluate the half-normal distance function, for sighting distances, potentially including covariates and expansion terms

Usage

```
halfnorm.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

a	A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If a is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in a are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
dist	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
covars	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument dist .
w.hi	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as halfnorm, negexp, and hazrate), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as oneStep and uniform).

Details

The half-normal distance function is

$$f(d|\sigma) = \exp\left(-\frac{d^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$$

where $\sigma = \exp(x'a)$, x is a vector of covariate values associated with distance d (i.e., a row of covars), and a is a vector of the first $\text{ncol}(\text{covars})$ values in argument a .

Some authors parameterize the halfnorm without the "2" in the denominator of the exponent. `Rdistance` includes "2" in this denominator to make quantiles of the half normal agree with the standard normal. This means that half-normal coefficients in `Rdistance` (i.e., $\sigma = \exp(x'a)$) can be interpreted as normal standard errors. Approximately 95% of distances should occur between 0 and 2σ .

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ ($n = \text{length}(\text{dist})$; $k = \text{number of cases} = \text{nrow}(a)$) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; $b = \text{number of canonical parameters in the likelihood}$; $k = \text{number of cases}$). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, other `<likelihood>.like` functions

Examples

```
d <- seq(0, 100, length=100)
covs <- matrix(1,length(d),1)
halfnorm.like(log(20), d, covs)

plot(d, halfnorm.like(log(20), d, covs)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(d, halfnorm.like(log(40), d, covs)$L.unscaled, col="blue")

# Evaluate 3 functions at once using matrix of coefficients:
# sigma ~ 20, 30, 40
coefs <- matrix(log(c(7.39,7.33, 4.48,44.80, 2.72,216.54))
               , byrow = TRUE
               , ncol=2) # (3 coef vectors)X(2 covars)
covs <- matrix(c(rep(1,length(d))
               , rep(0.5,length(d)))
               , nrow = length(d)) # 100 X 2
L <- halfnorm.like( coefs, d, covs )
```

```
L$L.unscaled # 100 X (3 coef vectors)
L$params     # 100 X (3 coef vectors); ~ log(c(20,30,40))
matplot(d, L$L.unscaled, type="l")
```

halfnorm.start.limits *Start and limit values for halfnorm distance function*

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the half normal distance function.

Usage

```
halfnorm.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

ml Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to [parseModel\(\)](#). Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to [dfuncEstim\(\)](#). 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A list containing the following components

start	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
lowlimit	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
uplimit	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
names	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

hazrate.like	<i>Hazard rate likelihood</i>
--------------	-------------------------------

Description

Computes the hazard rate distance function.

Usage

```
hazrate.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

<code>a</code>	A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If <code>a</code> is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in <code>a</code> are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
<code>dist</code>	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
<code>covars</code>	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument <code>dist</code> .
<code>w.hi</code>	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as <code>halfnorm</code> , <code>negexp</code> , and <code>hazrate</code>), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as <code>oneStep</code> and <code>uniform</code>).

Details

The hazard rate likelihood is

$$f(x|\sigma, k) = 1 - \exp(-(x/\sigma)^{-k})$$

where σ determines location (i.e., distance at which the function equals $1 - \exp(-1) = 0.632$), and k determines slope of the function at σ (i.e., larger k equals steeper slope at σ). For distance analysis, the valid range for both σ and k is ≥ 0 .

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ ($n = \text{length dist}$; $k = \text{number of cases} = \text{nrow}(a)$) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.

- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; b = number of canonical parameters in the likelihood; k = number of cases). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, other `<likelihood>.like` functions

Examples

```
d <- seq(0, 100, length=100)
covs <- matrix(1,length(d),1)
hazrate.like(c(log(20), 5), d, covs)

# Changing location parameter
plot(d, hazrate.like(c(log(20), 5), d, covs)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(d, hazrate.like(c(log(40), 5), d, covs)$L.unscaled, col="blue")
abline(h = 1 - exp(-1), lty = 2)
abline(v = c(20,40), lty = 2)

# Changing slope parameter
plot(d, hazrate.like(c(log(50), 20), d, covs)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(d, hazrate.like(c(log(50), 2), d, covs)$L.unscaled, col="blue")
abline(h = 1 - exp(-1), lty = 2)
abline(v = 50, lty = 2)
```

`hazrate.start.limits` *Start and limit values for hazrate distance function*

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the hazard rate distance function.

Usage

```
hazrate.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

<code>ml</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
-----------------	---

Value

A list containing the following components

start	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
lowlimit	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
uplimit	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
names	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

hermite.expansion	<i>Hermite expansion factors</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------

Description

Computes Hermite expansion terms for use in distance analysis. The Hermite (and other expansions) allow "wiggle" in estimated distance functions.

Usage

```
hermite.expansion(x, expansions)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion series. For distance analysis, x should be the proportion of the maximum sighting distance at which a group was sighted, i.e., $x = d/w$, where d is sighting distance and w is maximum sighting distance.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of expansion terms to compute. Must be one of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5.

Details

There are, in general, several expansions that can be called Hermite. Let $w = 4x - 2$. Rdistance's Hermite expansions are:

- **First term:**

$$h_1(w) = w + 2,$$

- **Second term:**

$$h_2(w) = w^2 - 4,$$

- **Third term:**

$$h_3(w) = w^3 - 3w + 2,$$

- **Fourth term:**

$$h_4(w) = w^4 - 6w^2 + 8,$$

The maximum number of expansion terms computed is 4.

Value

A 3D array of size `nrow(x)` X `ncol(x)` X expansions. The 'pages' (3rd dimension) of this array are the cosine expansions of `x`. i.e., page 1 is the first expansion term of `x`, page 2 is the second expansion term of `x`, etc.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `cosine.expansion()`, `sine.expansion()`, `simple.expansion()`.

Examples

```
x <- matrix(seq(0, 1, length = 200), ncol = 1)
herm.expn <- hermite.expansion(x, 4)
plot(range(x), range(herm.expn), type="n")
matlines(x, herm.expn[,1,1:4], col=rainbow(4), lty = 1)
```

HookeJeeves

'nlnmb' optimizer

Description

Call R native function 'nlnmb' to perform optimization.

Usage

```
HookeJeeves(m1, strt.lims)
```

Arguments

<code>m1</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
<code>strt.lims</code>	A list containing start, low, and high limits for parameters of the requested likelihood. This list is typically produced by a call to <code>startLimits()</code> .

Value

A list with following named components:

- `par` = parameters
- `loglik` = objective function value at minimum

- convergence = 0 for yes, other for no
- iterations = number of iterations
- evaluations = function evaluations
- message = a convergence message
- varcovar = a variance covariance matrix of parameters
- limits = low and high limits

huber.cumFunc

Huber Cumulative Function

Description

Computes the cumulative function of the huber likelihood. The cumulative function is proportional to the huber cumulative distribution function, differing only by appropriate scaling constant.

Usage

```
huber.cumFunc(x, t1, t2, p, w)
```

Arguments

x	A vector of distances. Can have units or not (i.e., regular numeric).
t1	A vector of values for the θ_1 parameter of the huber likelihood. If x has units, t1 must have compatible units.
t2	A vector of values for the θ_2 parameter of the huber likelihood. If x has units, t2 must have compatible units.
p	A vector of values for the p parameter of the huber likelihood. If x has units, p must have units of [1] (i.e., setUnits(p, 1)).
w	A vector of maximum strip widths, the maximum distance. If x has units, x must have compatible units.

Value

A vector of values from the huber cumulative function. The huber cumulative function is

$$F(x|\theta_1, \theta_2, p) = \int_0^x f(y|\theta_1, \theta_2, p) dy,$$

where $f(y|\theta_1, \theta_2, p)$ is Rdistance's huber likelihood. The only difference between this *cumulative function*, and the *cumulative distribution function* is the scaling constant. That is, the maximum of the *cumulative function* is greater than 1 while the maximum *cumulative distribution function* is exactly 1.

See Also

[huber.like\(\)](#)

Examples

```
d <- -10:210

# Cumulative function
fd <- huber.cumFunc(d, 125, 25, .05, 200)
plot(d, fd, type="l")

# Cumulative distribution function
Fd <- fd / huber.cumFunc(200, 125, 25, .05, 200)
```

huber.like	<i>Huber distance function</i>
------------	--------------------------------

Description

Computes the Huber likelihood for use as a distance function. The Huber likelihood is a mixture of an inverted Huber loss and a uniform distribution. The distance function is quadratic from the lowest distance to its first parameter, linear from the first parameter to the sum of its first and second parameter, and constant after that.

Usage

```
huber.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

a	A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If a is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in a are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
dist	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
covars	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument dist .
w.hi	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as <code>halfnorm</code> , <code>negexp</code> , and <code>hazrate</code>), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as <code>oneStep</code> and <code>uniform</code>).

Details

The 'huber' likelihood is an inverted version of the Huber loss function, mixed with a uniform at the upper end, and contains three canonical parameters. The 'huber' distance function is a negative

quadratic between θ and its first parameter θ_1 , linear between θ_1 and $\theta_1 + \theta_2$, and constant after $\theta_1 + \theta_2$. Specifically, the 'huber' likelihood is,

$$f(d|\theta_1, \theta_2, p) = \left(1 - \frac{(1-p)h(d)}{m}\right) I(0 \leq d \leq \Theta) + p I(\Theta < d \leq w)$$

where $\Theta = \theta_1 + \theta_2$, $w = w.\text{hi} - w.\text{lo}$, $m = \theta_1(\Theta - 0.5\theta_1)$ and $h(d)$ is Huber loss between 0 and Θ , i.e.,

$$h(d) = 0.5d^2 I(0 \leq d \leq \theta_1) + \theta_1(d - 0.5\theta_1) I(\theta_1 < d \leq \Theta).$$

The first parameter, θ_1 , is related to covariates, i.e., $\log(\theta_1) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \dots + \beta_q x_q$. θ_2 and p are constant across covariate values.

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ ($n = \text{length dist}$; $k = \text{number of cases} = \text{nrow(a)}$) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; $b = \text{number of canonical parameters in the likelihood}$; $k = \text{number of cases}$). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

See Also

See [Rdistance tutorials](#) for a method to generate random observations from the Huber likelihood.

Examples

```
t1 <- c(65,80,120)
t2 <- 60
p <- 0.05
a <- matrix(c(log(t1)
               , rep(t2,3)
               , rep(p,3))
            , 3,3)
d <- seq(0, 200, length=201)
X <- matrix(1,length(d),1)
y <- huber.like(a, d, X)

# Plot showing covariate effects
plot(range(d), range(y$L.unscaled)
     , type = "n", xlab = "d", ylab = "Huber(d)")
for(i in 1:3){
  # Distance functions
  lines(d
```

```

    , y$L.unscaled[,i]
    , col = i
    , lwd= 2)
# Quadratic to linear transitions
points(exp(a[i,1])
    , y$L.unscaled[(t1[i]-0.1) < d & d < (t1[i]+0.01),i]
    , pch = 16
    , col = i )
# Linear to constant transition
Theta <- exp(a[i,1]) + a[i,2]
points(Theta
    , y$L.unscaled[(Theta-0.1) < d & d < (Theta+0.1),i]
    , pch = 15
    , col = i )
}

```

huber.start.limits *Start and limit values for the Huber distance function*

Description

Computes starting values and limits for the 'huber' distance function.

Usage

```
huber.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
----	---

Value

A list containing the following components

start	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
lowlimit	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
uplimit	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
names	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

insertOneStepBreaks	<i>Insert oneStep Likelihood breaks</i>
---------------------	---

Description

Compute break points in a oneStep likelihood and insert them into a sequence of distances. The idea is to insert a point just left and just right of the breaks so that they plot as vertical lines.

Usage

```
insertOneStepBreaks(obj, newData, xseq)
```

Arguments

obj	A fitted Rdistance model object
newData	A data frame containing covariate values to use in prediction.
xseq	A vector of distances into which the break points are inserted.

Value

A vector like xseq, but with the break points inserted.

integratedDfuncs	<i>Integration of distance functions</i>
------------------	--

Description

Integrates under distances functions using exact integrals when possible. If exact integrals are not known, numerical integration is used.

Usage

```
integratedDfuncs(object, ml)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
--------	---

m1 Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to `parseModel()`. Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to `dfuncEstim()`. 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Details

Let K be the integral under distance function $g(x)$ (i.e., the output from this routine). In distance analysis, the observation likelihood being evaluated for maximization is the *density*, $f(x) = g(x)/K$. K is a key quantity in distance analysis and is called the "effective sampling distance".

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

Examples

```
# Faking a model frame
m1 <- list( likelihood = "halfnorm"
            , expansions = 0
            , w.lo = 0 %m% .
            , w.hi = 100 %m% .
            , Units = "m"
            )
attr(m1, "transType") <- "line"

parms <- matrix(75, nrow = 1)
integrateDfuncs(parms, m1)

# check: Normal, 0 to 100, sd = 75, scaled to mode = 1
(pnorm(q = 100, mean = 0, sd = 75) - 0.5) * sqrt(2*pi)*75
```

integrateGammaLines *Integrate Gamma line surveys*

Description

Compute integral of the Gamma distance function for line-transect surveys.

Usage

```
integrateGammaLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

#' Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w \left(\frac{x}{m}\right)^{\alpha-1} e^{-(x-m)/\sigma_i} dx,$$

where $w = w_{hi} - w_{lo}$, σ_i is the i -th estimated scale parameter for the Gamma distance function, and m is the mode of Gamma (i.e., $(\alpha - 1)\sigma_i$). `Rdistance` computes the integral using R's base function `pgamma()`, which for all intents and purposes is exact. See also [Gamma.like\(\)](#).

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in `object`. If `object` is a distance function and `newdata` is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If `object` is a distance function and `newdata` is `NULL`, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If `object` is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by [nLL\(\)](#) and [effectiveDistance\(\)](#).

See Also

[integrateNumeric\(\)](#); [integrateNegexpLines\(\)](#); [integrateOneStepLines\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Fake distance function object w/ minimum inputs for integration
d <- rep(1,4) %m%. # Only units needed, not values
obs <- factor(rep(c("obs1", "obs2"), 2))
beta <- c(4.0, -0.5, 1.5) # {'Intercept', b_1, shape}
w.hi <- 125
w.lo <- 20
ml <- list(
  mf = model.frame(d ~ obs)
  , par = beta
  , likelihood = "Gamma"
  , w.lo = w.lo %##% "m"
  , w.hi = w.hi %##% "m"
  , expansions = 0
)
class(ml) <- "dfunc"
integrateGammaLines(ml)

# Check: Integral of Gamma density from 0 to w.hi-w.lo
b <- exp(c(beta[1], beta[1] + beta[2]))
B <- Rdistance::GammaReparam(shp = beta[3], scl = b)
m <- (B$shp - 1)*B$scl
f.at.m <- dgamma(m, shape = B$shp, scale = B$scl)
integral <- pgamma(q = w.hi - w.lo, shape = B$shp, scale = B$scl) / f.at.m
integral
```

integrateHalfnormLines

Integrate Half-normal line surveys

Description

Compute integral of the half-normal distance function for line-transect surveys.

Usage

```
integrateHalfnormLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|---------|---|
| object | Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units. |
| newdata | A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix. |
| w.lo | Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units. |
| w.hi | Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units. |
| Units | Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. |

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w e^{-x^2/2\sigma_i^2} dx = \sqrt{2\pi}\sigma_i(\Phi(w) - 0.5),$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$, σ_i is the estimated half-normal distance function parameter for the i -th observed distance, and Φ is the standard normal cumulative probability function. `Rdistance` uses R's base function `pnorm()`, which for all intents and purposes is exact.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and `newdata` is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and `newdata` is `NULL`, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

[integrateNumeric\(\)](#); [integrateNegexpLines\(\)](#); [integrateOneStepLines\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Fake distance function object w/ minimum inputs for integration
d <- rep(1,4) %m%. # Only units needed, not values
obs <- factor(rep(c("obs1", "obs2"), 2))
beta <- c(3.5, -0.5)
w.hi <- 125
w.lo <- 20
m1 <- list(
  mf = model.frame(d ~ obs)
  , par = beta
  , likelihood = "halfnorm"
  , w.lo = w.lo %##% "m"
  , w.hi = w.hi %##% "m"
  , expansions = 0
)
class(m1) <- "dfunc"
integrateHalfnormLines(m1)

# Check: Integral of exp(-x^2/(2*s^2)) from 0 to w.hi-w.lo
b <- exp(c(beta[1], beta[1] + beta[2]))
integral <- (pnorm(w.hi, mean=w.lo, sd = b) - 0.5) * sqrt(2*pi)*b
integral
```

integrateHalfnormPoints

Integrate Half-normal Point transects

Description

Compute integral of the half-normal distance function for point surveys.

Usage

```
integrateHalfnormPoints(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w x e^{-x^2/2\sigma_i^2} dx = 0.5\sigma_i^2(1 - e^{-w^2/2\sigma_i^2}),$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$ and σ_i is the estimated half-normal distance function parameter for the i -th observed distance.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpPoints()`; `integrateOneStepPoints()`

Examples

```
# Fake distance function object w/ minimum inputs for integration
d <- rep(1,4) %m%. # Only units needed, not values
obs <- factor(rep(c("obs1", "obs2"), 2))
beta <- c(3.5, -0.5)
w.hi <- 125
w.lo <- 20
ml <- list(
  mf = model.frame(d ~ obs)
  , par = beta
  , likelihood = "halfnorm"
  , w.lo = w.lo %##% "m"
  , w.hi = w.hi %##% "m"
  , expansions = 0
)
class(ml) <- "dfunc"
integrateHalfnormPoints(ml)

# Check: Integral of x exp(-x^2/(2*s^2)) from 0 to w = w.hi-w.lo
sigma <- exp(c(beta[1], beta[1] + beta[2]))
w <- w.hi - w.lo
integral <- sigma^2 * (1 - exp(-w^2 / (2*sigma^2)))
integral

# Effective detection radius
sqrt(2 * integral)
```

integrateHazrateLines *Integrate Hazard-rate line survey distance functions*

Description

Compute integral of the hazard-rate distance function for line-transect surveys.

Usage

```
integrateHazrateLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w (1 - e^{-(x/\sigma_i)^{-k}}) dx = w - \frac{\sigma_i}{k} \Gamma\left(-\frac{1}{k}, \frac{\sigma_i^k}{w}\right),$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$, σ_i and k are estimated hazard-rate distance function parameters for the i -th observed distance, and $\Gamma()$ is the incomplete gamma function. Rdistance uses the incomplete gamma function implemented in `expint::gammainc()`, which for all intents and purposes is exact.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpLines()`; `integrateOneStepLines()`

Examples

```
# A pre-estimated hazard rate distance function: sparrowDfuncObserver
fit <- sparrowDfuncObserver
table(ESW(fit))
table(integrateHazrateLines(fit))

# Check: Integral of 1 - exp(-(x/s)^(-k)) from 0 to w.hi-w.lo
w <- dropUnits(fit$w.hi - fit$w.lo)
params <- predict(fit)
sigma <- params[,1]
minusk <- -params[,2]

outArea <- w + sigma *
  expint::gammainc(1/minusk, (w/sigma)^(minusk)) / minusk
table(outArea)
```

integrateHuberLines	<i>Integrate Line-transect Huber function</i>
---------------------	---

Description

Compute exact integral of the 'huber' distance function for line transects.

Usage

```
integrateHuberLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpLines()`; `integrateHalfnormLines()`

Examples

```

w <- 250
T1 <- 160
T2 <- 20
p <- 0.03
obj <- matrix(c(T1,T2,p), 1, 3)

integrateHuberLines(obj
  , w.lo = units::set_units(0,"m")
  , w.hi = units::set_units(w,"m")
  , Units = "m")

# same
huber.cumFunc(w,T1,T2,p,w)

# check by numeric integration
hubLike <- function(d, T1, T2, p, wl, wh) {
  y <- huber.like(a = c(log(T1), T2, p)
    , dist = d - wl
    , covars = matrix(1, length(d))
    , w.hi = wh - wl)$L.unscaled
  y
}
integrate(hubLike, lower = 0, upper = w, T1 = T1
  , T2 = T2, p = p, wl = 0, wh = w)

```

integrateKey

Compute and print distance function integration

Description

Check several integration characteristics, and report them to screen. This was designed to print info when user asks for higher verbose level. The scaled distance function should integrate to 1.0 every iteration of maximization, and this function checks that.

Usage

```
integrateKey(ml, key, f0, plot = FALSE)
```

Arguments

ml	The fitted object or model list
key	The scaled distance function.
f0	The value of $f(0)$ when integrating line transects. This should be the ESW for the case.
plot	Logical scalar. If TRUE, plot a diagnostic consisting of the distance function and approximating points we use for quadrature.

Value

Nothing. Prints information on integrals to the screen.

integrateNegexpLines *Integrate Negative exponential*

Description

Compute integral of the negative exponential distance function.

Usage

```
integrateNegexpLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w e^{-a_i x} dx = \frac{1}{a_i} (1 - e^{-a_i w}),$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$ and a_i is the estimated negative exponential distance function parameter for the i -th observed distance.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpPoints()`; `integrateOneStepLines()`

Examples

```
# Fake distance function object w/ minimum inputs for integration
d <- rep(1,4) ### "m" # Only units needed, not values
obs <- factor(rep(c("obs1", "obs2"), 2))
beta <- c(-5, -0.5)
w.hi <- 125
w.lo <- 20
ml <- list(
  mf = model.frame(d ~ obs)
  , par = beta
  , likelihood = "negexp"
  , w.lo = w.lo ### "m"
  , w.hi = w.hi ### "m"
  , expansions = 0
)
class(ml) <- "dfunc"
integrateNegexpLines(ml)

# Check: Integral of exp(-bx) from 0 to w.hi-w.lo
b <- c(exp(beta[1]), exp(beta[1] + beta[2]))
integral <- (1 - exp(-b*(w.hi - w.lo))) / b
integral
```

integrateNegexpPoints *Integrate Negative exponential point surveys*

Description

Compute integral of the negative exponential distance function for point surveys

Usage

```
integrateNegexpPoints(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w x e^{-a_i x} dx = \frac{1 - e^{-a_i w} (a_i w + 1)}{a_i^2},$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$ and a_i is the estimated negative exponential distance function parameter for the i -th observed distance.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpLines()`

Examples

```
# Fake distance function object w/ minimum inputs for integration
d <- rep(1,4) ##% "m" # Only units needed, not values
obs <- factor(rep(c("obs1", "obs2"), 2))
beta <- c(-5, -0.5)
w.hi <- 125
w.lo <- 20
ml <- list(
  mf = model.frame(d ~ obs)
  , par = beta
  , likelihood = "negexp"
  , w.lo = w.lo ##% "m"
  , w.hi = w.hi ##% "m"
  , expansions = 0
)
class(ml) <- "dfunc"
integrateNegexpPoints(ml)

# Check: Integral of x*exp(-bx) from 0 to w.hi-w.lo
b <- c(exp(beta[1]), exp(beta[1] + beta[2]))
integral <- (1 - exp(-b*(w.hi - w.lo)) * (b*(w.hi - w.lo) + 1)) / (b^2)
integral
```

integrateNumeric

Numeric Integration

Description

Numerically integrate under a distance function.

Usage

```
integrateNumeric(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL,
  expansions = NULL,
  series = NULL,
  isPoints = NULL,
  likelihood = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., expansions is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).
series	If expansions > 0, this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
isPoints	Boolean. TRUE if integration is for point surveys. FALSE for line-transect surveys. Line-transect surveys integrate under the distance function, $g(x)$, while point surveys integrate under the distance function times distances, $xg(x)$.

likelihood String specifying the likelihood to fit. Built-in likelihoods at present are "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp".

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is nrow(newdata). If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is length(distances(object)). If object is a matrix, return's length is nrow(object).

Numeric Integration

Rdistance uses Simpson's composite 1/3 rule to numerically integrate distance functions from 0 to the maximum sighting distance ($w_{hi} - w_{lo}$). The number of points evaluated during numerical integration is controlled by options(Rdistance_intEvalPts) (default 101). Option Rdistance_intEvalPts must be odd because Simpson's rule requires an even number of intervals. Lower values of Rdistance_intEvalPts increase calculation speeds; but, decrease accuracy. Rdistance_intEvalPts must be ≥ 5 . A warning is thrown if Rdistance_intEvalPts < 29 . Empirical tests by the author suggest Rdistance_intEvalPts values ≥ 30 are accurate to several decimal points for smooth distance functions (e.g., hazrate, halfnorm, negexp) and that all Rdistance_intEvalPts ≥ 101 produce identical results if the distance function is not smooth.

Details: Let $n = \text{options}(\text{Rdistance_intEvalPts})$. Evaluate the distance function at n equal-spaced locations $\{f(x_0), f(x_1), \dots, f(x_n)\}$ between 0 and $(w_{hi} - w_{lo})$. Simpson's composite approximation to the area under the curve is

$$\frac{1}{3}h(f(x_0) + 4f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 4f(x_3) + 2f(x_4) + \dots + 2f(x_{n-2}) + 4f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n))$$

where h is the interval size $(w_{hi} - w_{lo}) / n$.

Physical units on the return values are the original (linear) units if object contains line-transect data (e.g., [m]), or square of the original units if object contains point-transect data (e.g., [m²]). Point-transect units are squared because the likelihood is the product of the detection function (which is unitless) and distances (which have units).

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

Examples

```
# A halfnorm distance function
fit <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf, dist~1, likelihood = "halfnorm")

exact <- integrateHalfnormLines(fit)[1,] # exact area
apprx <- integrateNumeric(fit)[1] # Numeric approx
pd <- options(digits = 20)
cbind(exact, aprrx)
absDiff <- abs(apprx - exact)
absDiff
options(pd)
```

```
# halfnorm approx good to this number of digits
round(log10(absDiff),1)
```

integrateOneStepLines *Integrate Line-transect One-step function*

Description

Compute exact integral of the one-step distance function for line transects.

Usage

```
integrateOneStepLines(object, newdata = NULL, Units = NULL)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par),1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w \left(\frac{p}{\theta_i} I(0 \leq x \leq \theta_i) + \frac{1-p}{w-\theta_i} I(\theta_i < x \leq w) \right) dx = \frac{\theta_i}{p},$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$, θ_i is the estimated one-step distance function threshold for the i-th observed distance, and p is the estimated one-step proportion.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpLines()`; `integrateHalfnormLines()`

Examples

```
# A oneStep distance function on simulated data
whi <- 250
T <- 100 # true threshold
p <- 0.85 # true proportion <T
n <- 200 # num simulated points
x <- c( runif(n*p, min=0, max=T), runif(n*(1-p), min=T, max=whi))
x <- setUnits(x, "m")
tranID <- sample(rep(1:10, each=n/10), replace=FALSE)
detectDf <- data.frame(transect = tranID, dist = x)
siteDf <- data.frame(transect = 1:10
                    , length = rep(setUnits(10,"m"), 10))
distDf <- RdistDf(siteDf, detectDf)

# Estimation
## Not run:
# The following requires ~8 seconds > CRAN requirements
fit <- dfuncEstim(distDf
                 , formula = dist ~ 1
                 , likelihood = "oneStep"
                 , w.hi = setUnits(whi, "m")
                 )
integrateOneStepLines(fit)
ESW(fit)

# Check:
T.hat <- exp(fit$par[1])
p.hat <- fit$par[2]
gAtT <- ((1-p.hat) * T.hat) / (p.hat * (whi - T.hat))

plot(fit)
abline(h = gAtT, col="blue")

areaLE.T <- (1.0) * T.hat
areaGT.T <- gAtT * (whi - T.hat)
areaLE.T + areaGT.T # ESW

# Equivalent
T.hat / p.hat

## End(Not run)
```

integrateOneStepNumeric

Numeric Integration of One-step Function

Description

Compute integral of the one-step distance function using numeric integration. This function is only called for oneStep functions that contain expansion factors.

Usage

```
integrateOneStepNumeric(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL,
  expansions = NULL,
  series = NULL,
  isPoints = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., expansions is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).
series	If expansions > 0, this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
isPoints	Boolean. TRUE if integration is for point surveys. FALSE for line-transect surveys. Line-transect surveys integrate under the distance function, g(x), while point surveys integrate under the distance function times distances, xg(x).

Details

The `oneStep.like()` function has an extremely large discontinuity at Theta. Accurate numeric integration requires inserting Theta and Theta+ (a value just larger than Theta) into the series of points being evaluated. Because this creates variable sized intervals, the Trapezoid rule must be used. Rdistance's Simpson's rule routine (`integrateNumeric()`) will not work for oneStep likelihoods that have expansions.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateOneStepLines()`; `integrateOneStepPoints()`

integrateOneStepPoints

Integrate Point-survey One-step function

Description

Compute integral of the one-step distance function for point-surveys.

Usage

```
integrateOneStepPoints(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code>), must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w x \left(\frac{p}{\theta_i} I(0 \leq x \leq \theta_i) + \frac{1-p}{w-\theta_i} I(\theta_i < x \leq w) \right) dx = \frac{\theta_i}{2p} ((1-p)w + \theta_i),$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$, θ_i is the estimated one-step distance function threshold for the i -th observed distance, and p is the estimated one-step proportion.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a

distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is length(distances(object)). If object is a matrix, return's length is nrow(object).

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateOneStepNumeric()`; `integrateOneStepLines()`

Examples

```
fit <- dfuncEstim(thrasherDf, dist~1, likelihood = "oneStep")
integrateOneStepPoints(fit, newdata = data.frame(`(Intercept)`=1))
EDR(fit, newdata = data.frame(`(Intercept)`=1))

# Check:
Theta <- exp(fit$par[1])
Theta <- setUnits(Theta, "m")
p <- fit$par[2]
w.hi <- fit$w.hi
w.lo <- fit$w.lo
g.at0 <- w.lo
g.atT <- Theta
g.atTPlusFuzz <- (((1-p) * Theta) / ((w.hi - Theta) * p))*Theta
g.atWhi <- (((1-p) * Theta) / ((w.hi - Theta) * p))*w.hi
area.0.to.T <- (Theta - w.lo) * (g.atT - g.at0) / 2 # triangle; Theta^2/2
area.T.to.w <- (w.hi - Theta) * (g.atTPlusFuzz + g.atWhi) / 2 # trapazoid
area <- area.0.to.T + area.T.to.w
edr <- sqrt( 2*area )
```

integrateTriangleLines

Integrate Line-transect Triangle function

Description

Compute exact integral of the triangle distance function for line transects.

Usage

```
integrateTriangleLines(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  w.lo = NULL,
  w.hi = NULL,
  Units = NULL
)
```

Arguments

object	Either an Rdistance fitted distance function (an object that inherits from class "dfunc"; usually produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code>), or a matrix of canonical distance function parameters (e.g., <code>matrix(exp(fit\$par), 1)</code>). If a matrix, each row corresponds to a distance function and each column is a parameter. The first column is the parameter related to sighting covariates and must be transformed to the "real" space (i.e., inverse link, which is <code>exp()</code> , must be applied outside this routine). If object is a matrix, it should not have measurement units because only derived quantities (e.g., ESW) have units; Rdistance function parameters themselves never have units.
newdata	A data frame containing new values for the distance function covariates. If NULL and object is a fitted distance function, the observed covariates stored in object are used (behavior similar to <code>predict.lm()</code>). Argument newdata is ignored if object is a matrix.
w.lo	Minimum sighting distance or left-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
w.hi	Maximum sighting distance or right-truncation value if object is a matrix. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function. Must have physical measurement units.
Units	Physical units of sighting distances if object is a matrix. Sighting distance units can differ from units of w.lo or w.hi. Ignored if object is a fitted distance function.

Details

Returned integrals are

$$\int_0^w \left(\frac{p}{\theta_i} I(0 \leq x \leq \theta_i) + \frac{1-p}{w-\theta_i} I(\theta_i < x \leq w) \right) dx = \frac{\theta_i}{p},$$

where $w = w.hi - w.lo$, θ_i is the estimated one-step distance function threshold for the i -th observed distance, and p is the estimated one-step proportion.

Value

A vector of areas under the distance functions represented in object. If object is a distance function and newdata is specified, the returned vector's length is `nrow(newdata)`. If object is a distance function and newdata is NULL, returned vector's length is `length(distances(object))`. If object is a matrix, return's length is `nrow(object)`.

Note

Users will not normally call this function. It is called internally by `nLL()` and `effectiveDistance()`.

See Also

`integrateNumeric()`; `integrateNegexpLines()`; `integrateHalfnormLines()`

Examples

```
w <- 250
T <- 160
p <- 0.4
obj <- matrix(c(T,p), 1, 2)

integrateTriangleLines(obj
  , w.lo = units::set_units(0,"m")
  , w.hi = units::set_units(w,"m")
  , Units = "m")

# same
(1 + p) * T / 2 + p * (w - T)

# check by numeric integration
triLike <- function(d, T, p, wl, wh) {
  y <- triangle.like(a = c(log(T), p)
    , dist = d - wl
    , covars = matrix(1, length(d))
    , w.hi = wh - wl)$L.unscaled
  y
}
integrate(triLike, lower = 0, upper = w, T = T, p = p, wl = 0, wh = w)
```

intercept.only

Detect intercept-only distance function

Description

Utility function to detect whether a distance function has covariates beyond the intercept. If the model contains an intercept-only, effective distance is constant across detections and short-cuts can be implemented in code.

Usage

```
intercept.only(object)
```

Arguments

object An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to `dfuncEstim()`.

Value

TRUE if object contains an intercept-only. FALSE if object contains at least one detection-level or transect-level covariate in the detection function.

is.points	<i>Tests for point surveys</i>
-----------	--------------------------------

Description

Determines whether a distance function is for a point survey or line survey.

Usage

```
is.points(x)
```

Arguments

x	Either an estimated distance function, output by <code>dfuncEstim</code> , or an <code>Rdistance</code> nested data frame, output by <code>RdistDf</code> .
---	---

Value

TRUE if the model frame or fitted distance function contains point surveys. FALSE if the model frame or distance function contains line transect surveys.

is.RdistDf	<i>Check RdistDf data frames</i>
------------	----------------------------------

Description

Checks the validity of `Rdistance` nested data frames. `Rdistance` data frames are a particular implementation of rowwise tibbles that contain detections in a list column, and extra attributes specifying types.

Usage

```
is.RdistDf(df, verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

df	A data frame to check
verbose	If TRUE, an explanation of the check that fails is printed. Otherwise, no information on checks is provided.

Details

The following checks are performed (in this order):

- `attr(df, "detectionColumn")` exists and points to a valid list-based column in the data frame.
- `attr(df, "obsType")` exists and is one of the valid values.
- `attr(df, "transType")` exists and is one of the valid values.
- `attr(df, "effortColumn")` exists and points to a column in the data frame with 1 dimensional units attached.
- The data frame is either a 'rowwise_df' or 'grouped_df' tibble.
- The data frame has only one row per group. One row per group is implied by 'rowwise_df', but not a 'grouped_df', and both are allowed in `Rdistance`. One row per group ensures rows are uniquely identified and hence represents one transect.
- No column names in the list-column are duplicated in the non-list columns of the data frame. This check ensures that `tidyr::unnest` executes.

Other data checks, e.g., for measurement units, are performed later in `dfuncEstim()`, after the model is specified.

Value

TRUE or FALSE invisibly. TRUE means all checks passed. FALSE implies at least one check failed. Use `verbose = TRUE` to see which.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
is.RdistDf(sparrowDf)

# Data frame is okay, but no attributes
data(sparrowDetectionData)
data(sparrowSiteData)
sparrowDf <- sparrowDetectionData |>
  dplyr::nest_by( siteID
    , .key = "distances") |>
  dplyr::right_join(sparrowSiteData, by = "siteID")
is.RdistDf(sparrowDf, verbose = TRUE)

# Manually add required attributes
attr(sparrowDf, "detectionColumn") <- "distances"
attr(sparrowDf, "effortColumn") <- "length"
attr(sparrowDf, "obsType") <- "single"
attr(sparrowDf, "transType") <- "line"
is.RdistDf(sparrowDf, verbose = TRUE)
```

is.smoothed

*Tests for smoothed distance functions***Description**

Determines whether a distance function is a non-parametric smooth or classic parameterized function.

Usage

```
is.smoothed(object)
```

Arguments

object An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to `dfuncEstim()`.

Value

TRUE if the model frame or fitted distance function arises from a non-parametric density smoother.
FALSE if the model frame or distance function is a parameterized function.

is.Unitless

*Test whether object is unitless***Description**

Tests whether a 'units' object is actually unitless. Unitless objects, such as ratios, should be assigned units of [1]. Often they are, but sometimes unitless ratios are assigned units like [m/m]. The `units` package should always convert [m/m] to [1], but it does not always. Sometimes units like [m/m] mess things up, so it is better to remove them before calculations.

Usage

```
is.Unitless(obj)
```

Arguments

obj A numeric scalar or vector, with or without units.

Value

TRUE if `obj` has units and they are either [1] or the denominator units equal the numerator units. Otherwise, return FALSE. If `obj` does not have units, this routine returns TRUE.

Examples

```
a <- setUnits(2, "m")
b <- a / a
is.Unitless(a)
is.Unitless(b)
is.Unitless(3)
```

likeParamNames	<i>Likelihood parameter names</i>
----------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Returns names of the likelihood parameters. This is a helper function and is not necessary for estimation. It is nice to label some parameters with descriptive names like "sigma" or "k", depending on the likelihood.

Usage

```
likeParamNames(like.form)
```

Arguments

like.form	A text string naming the form of the likelihood. An error is thrown if the likelihood is unknown.
-----------	---

Value

A vector of parameter names for the likelihood

lines.dfunc	<i>lines.dfunc - Line plotting method for distance functions</i>
-------------	--

Description

Line plot method for objects of class 'dfunc' that adds distance functions to an existing plot.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
lines(x, newdata = NULL, prob = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	An estimated detection function object, normally produced by calling <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
<code>newdata</code>	A data frame containing new values of the covariates at which to evaluate the distance functions. If <code>newdata</code> is <code>NULL</code> , distance functions are evaluated at values of the observed covariates and results in one prediction per distance or transect (see parameter type). If <code>newdata</code> is not <code>NULL</code> and the model does not contain covariates, this routine returns one prediction for each row in <code>newdata</code> , but columns and values in <code>newdata</code> are ignored.
<code>prob</code>	Logical scalar for whether to scale the distance function to be a density function (integrates to one). Default behavior is designed to be compatible with the <code>plot</code> method for distance functions (<code>plot.dfunc()</code>). By default, line transect distance functions are not scaled to a density and integrate to the effective strip width. In contrast, point transects distance functions are scaled to be densities by default.
<code>...</code>	Parameters passed to <code>lines.default</code> that control attributes like color, line width, line type, etc.

Value

A data frame containing the x and y coordinates of the plotted line(s) is returned invisibly. X coordinates in the return are names x. Y coordinates in the return are named y1, y2, ..., yn, i.e., one column per returned distance function.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `plot.dfunc()`, `print.abund()`

Examples

```
# a simulated RdistDf
set.seed(87654)
x <- rnorm(1000, mean=0, sd=20)
x <- x[x >= 0]
x <- setUnits(x, "mi")
Df <- data.frame(transectID = "A"
                 , distance = x
                 ) |>
  dplyr::nest_by( transectID
                 , .key = "detections") |>
  dplyr::mutate(length = setUnits(100,"km"))
attr(Df, "detectionColumn") <- "detections"
attr(Df, "obsType") <- "single"
attr(Df, "transType") <- "line"
attr(Df,'effortColumn') <- "length"
is.RdistDf(Df) # TRUE

dfunc <- Df |> dfuncEstim(distance ~ 1, likelihood="halfnorm")
plot(dfunc, nbins = 40, col="lightgrey", border=NA, vertLines=FALSE)
lines(dfunc, col="grey30", lwd=15)
```

```

lines(dfunc, col="grey90", lwd=5, lty = 2)

# Multiple lines
data(sparrowDfuncObserver)
obsLevs <- levels(sparrowDfuncObserver$data$observer)
plot(sparrowDfuncObserver
     , vertLines = FALSE
     , lty = 0
     , plotBars = FALSE
     , main="Detection by observer"
     , legend = FALSE)
y <- lines(sparrowDfuncObserver
          , newdata = data.frame(observer = obsLevs)
          , col = palette.colors(length(obsLevs))
          , lty = 1
          , lwd = 4)
head(y) # values returned, with distances as column

```

makeLines

makeLines - Place random transects at a given spacing

Description

Place line transects inside one or more polygons at a supplied spacing, using a random start. For each polygon a random offset between 0 and spacing is drawn, then transects are generated and clipped to the polygon. This routine does the placement only; [findSpacing\(\)](#) computes a spacing that yields a target survey length, and [drawTransects\(\)](#) chains the two. Optionally, R independent random replicates can be returned.

Usage

```

makeLines(
  sPoly,
  type = c("rectangular", "zigzag"),
  angle = units::set_units(0, "degrees"),
  spacing,
  baseline = NULL,
  combine = TRUE,
  R = 1,
  minSolidity = 0.75,
  plot = FALSE
)

```

Arguments

sPoly	An sf or sfc object containing the polygon(s) (MULTIPOLYGON or POLYGON geometries) within which transects will be placed. sPoly must be projected to
-------	--

a planar coordinate system whose linear unit is meters (ideally an equal-area projection so areas are undistorted). Geographic coordinates are rejected.

type	The transect layout, one of: • "rectangular" (the default): parallel, equally spaced straight lines. • "zigzag": a single continuous path that zig-zags between opposite edges of the polygon.
angle	Orientation of "rectangular" transects. Must have units convertible to 'degrees' (i.e., either 'degrees' or 'radians'). <code>angle = 0 \[^\]</code> (the default) produces North-South transects; <code>angle = 90 \[^\]</code> produces East-West transects. Ignored when <code>type = "zigzag"</code>.
spacing	The distance between adjacent transects. Must have units convertible to meters (e.g., 'ft', 'km', 'mi', etc.). For "rectangular" transects this is the perpendicular distance between the parallel lines. For "zigzag" transects it is the distance along the baseline between <i>adjacent</i> legs. I.e., one complete zig-zag cycle (one side of polygon to the other and back) crosses the baseline twice, and the distance between those crossings is spacing. spacing that produces a specified total transect length can be obtained from findSpacing().
baseline	Optional sf/sfc LINESTRING giving the reference line for "zigzag" transects. Relevant only to "zigzag" transect. To construct zig-zag transects, the routine places points along the baseline spaced spacing apart (with a random start), then draws segments perpendicular to this baseline that span the polygon. The routine then connects every other point on the polygon boundary where the perpendicular segment intersects the boundary and this forms the zig-zag transect. Points along the boundary where "zigzag" transect legs meet are called "pivots". When NULL (the default) a straight baseline is estimated from the polygon (see Details). For "rectangular" transects the baseline does not influence construction (see angle). Supplying a baseline is only allowed when sPoly contains a single polygon. User supplied baselines are extended past the polygon's bounding box before use, so that pivots can be placed across the entire polygon.
combine	Logical controlling the geometry(ies) in the returned object. Both forms have the same onEffortLength and totalLength totals but differ in the geometry returned. • TRUE (the default): return the route actually flown, one continuous LINESTRING per polygon. Parallel legs for "rectangular" transects are joined by transit legs to form a back-and-forth type route. "zigzag" transects do not have transit legs between on-effort legs. The route is <i>not</i> clipped to the polygon, so off-effort transit legs can run outside the polygon. Sum of the returned lengths is totalLength. • FALSE: return one row per transect leg, with no transit legs. Sum of the returned lengths is onEffortLength in the returned object. Transit legs are clipped to the polygon so a leg that crosses a concavity will be broken into several pieces and is returned as a single MULTILINESTRING, so the returned geometries can be a mix of MULTILINESTRING and LINESTRING. When <code>combine == FALSE</code> and <code>type == "rectangular"</code>, the totalLength attribute <i>includes</i> the off-effort transit leg to the next on-effort leg, even though the transit leg is not returned in the geometry.

R	Number of independent random replicates to generate. Defaults to 1. The returned object contains R complete transect sets, one per replicate, and always carries an id column labeling each set "Replicate0001", "Replicate0002", and so on.
minSolidity	For "zigzag" transects with an estimated baseline, a warning is issued when a polygon's solidity (area divided by convex-hull area) falls below this value. The warning recommends splitting the polygon with <code>convexPartition()</code> and re-running on the pieces. Set to 0 to disable. Defaults to 0.75.
plot	Logical. If TRUE, the polygons, baselines, and generated transects are drawn on the current graphics device. When R > 1, each replicate is drawn in a different color. Defaults to FALSE.

Details

The returned transects distinguish *on-effort* length (the parts of the lines inside the polygon) from *total* length (on-effort plus off-effort transit). For "rectangular" transects the total includes the transit legs joining successive parallel legs. A "zigzag" route has no connectors because legs meet at pivot points on the polygon boundary. But, "zigzag" total length may not equal on-effort length because some legs may cross a polygon concavity that clips out the out-of-polygon segments.

When `combine = TRUE` the returned geometry is the route as flown, unclipped, so that it stays connected. Across a concave polygon it can leave the polygon, and those excursions are counted as off-effort transit. With `combine = FALSE` each leg is clipped to the polygon, so nothing is drawn outside the polygon and the returned geometry is the surveyed line only. Summing the length of the returned geometry therefore gives the total length when `combine = TRUE` and the on-effort length when `combine = FALSE`. Both `onEffortLength` and `totalLength` attributes are reported for both `combine` options.

When `type = "zigzag"` and no baseline is supplied, the baseline is estimated in three steps. First the polygon's centerline is constructed by connecting the midpoints of cross sections along the polygon's principal axis. Those midpoints wander with bends in the polygon boundaries. Second, the centerline is straightened by regressing its Y coordinates on its X coordinates and keeping only the slope of that regression. Third, the resulting direction is translated to pass through the polygon's centroid (even when the centroid falls outside the polygon) and drawn well past the polygon's bounding box in both directions. The baseline is therefore always straight. Strongly bent (i.e., highly concave) polygons are better handled by splitting them with `convexPartition()` (see `minSolidity`).

Value

An sf data frame of transect lines (geometries are either `LINESTRING` or `MULTILINESTRING`; a leg that clipping broke into pieces is one `MULTILINESTRING` row) with columns:

transectType	The layout used, "rectangular" or "zigzag".
id	Replicate label, e.g. "Replicate0001".
polygon	Integer index of the source polygon. Source polygons and indices are given in attribute "summary".
leg	Integer identifier of the leg within its polygon (1 when <code>combine = TRUE</code> , in which case the route is one long line with connectors).

spacing	The actual spacing used.
onEffortLength	On-effort (surveyed) length of the transect(s) represented on the row, i.e., the part inside the polygon. With units. Equals the length of the row's geometry when combine = FALSE.
totalLength	Total transect length of the segment(s) represented on the row. Total transect length includes the on-effort segment as well as the off-effort segment connecting to the next on-effort leg. With units.

A summary of the design is attached as an attribute `attr(x, "summary")`, a list with the layout type, the number of polygons `nPolygons`, the number of replicates `nReplicates`, `targetLength` (NA unless set by `drawTransects()`), and polygons. The polygons element is an sf LINESTRING data frame whose geometry column, `baseline`, holds each polygon's baseline, with columns `polygon` (integer index), `area` (with units), and `solidity` (measure of concavity; 1 = concave; <1 = less concave).

Author(s)

Original version included in `pronghornLT`: Tom Prebyl, Jason Carlisle, and Garrett Catlin. Updated and generalized for `Rdistance` by Trent McDonald

See Also

`findSpacing()`, `drawTransects()`.

Examples

```
# A simple tapered survey polygon (Alaska Albers, meters).
poly <- sf::st_sf(geometry = sf::st_sfc(sf::st_polygon(list(rbind(
  c(0, 0), c(60000, 0), c(60000, 25000), c(0, 10000), c(0, 0)))),
  crs = 3338))

# Rectangular transects at a 5 km spacing
set.seed(243579)
rec <- makeLines(poly, type = "rectangular", spacing = units::set_units(5, "km"))
c(onEffort = sum(rec$onEffortLength), total = sum(rec$totalLength))
plot(poly$geometry)
plot(rec$geometry, add=TRUE, col="red")
plot(attr(rec, "summary")$polygons$baseline, add=TRUE, col="blue")

# Angled rectangular transects with 5 km spacing
rec <- makeLines(poly, spacing = units::set_units(5, "km"), angle = units::set_units(pi/4, "rad"))
c(onEffort = sum(rec$onEffortLength), total = sum(rec$totalLength))
plot(poly$geometry)
plot(rec$geometry, add=TRUE, col="red")
plot(attr(rec, "summary")$polygons$baseline, add=TRUE, col="blue")

# Zigzag transects, adjacent legs crossing the baseline 4 km apart.
zz <- makeLines(poly, type = "zigzag", spacing = units::set_units(4, "km"))
sum(zz$totalLength)
plot(poly$geometry)
plot(zz$geometry, add=TRUE, col="red")
```

```

plot(attr(zz, "summary")$polygons$baseline, add=TRUE, col="blue")

# combine = FALSE returns one row per leg, clipped to the polygon.
zzLegs <- makeLines(poly, type = "zigzag", spacing = units::set_units(4, "km"),
                    combine = FALSE)
sum(zzLegs$onEffortLength)

```

maximize.g

Find coordinate of function maximum

Description

Find the x coordinate that maximizes $g(x)$.

Usage

```
maximize.g(fit, covars = NULL)
```

Arguments

fit	An estimated 'dfunc' object produced by dfuncEstim.
covars	Covariate values to calculate $g(x)$.

Value

The value of x that maximizes $g(x)$ in fit.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#)

Examples

```

## Not run:
# Fake data
set.seed(22223333)
x <- rgamma(100, 10, 1)

fit <- dfuncEstim( x, likelihood="Gamma", x.scl="max" )

maximize.g( fit ) # should be near 10.
fit$x.scl         # same thing

## End(Not run)

```

mlEstimates	<i>Distance function maximum likelihood estimates</i>
-------------	---

Description

Estimate parameters of a distance function using maximum likelihood.

Usage

```
mlEstimates(ml, strt.lims)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
strt.lims	A list containing start, low, and high limits for parameters of the requested likelihood. This list is typically produced by a call to startLimits() .

Value

An Rdistance fitted model object. This object contains the raw object returned by the optimization routine (e.g., nlmin), and additional components specific to Rdistance.

model.matrix.dfunc	<i>Rdistance model matrix</i>
--------------------	-------------------------------

Description

Extract the model matrix ("X" matrix) from an Rdistance model object.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
model.matrix(object, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to dfuncEstim() .
...	Ignored

Value

A matrix containing covariates for fitting an Rdistance model.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)
sparrowModel <- parseModel( sparrowDf, dist ~ observer )
model.matrix(sparrowModel)
```

nCovars	<i>Number of covariates</i>
---------	-----------------------------

Description

Return number of covariates in a distance model

Usage

```
nCovars(X)
```

Arguments

X The X matrix of covariates, or a vector.

Details

The reason this routine is needed is that sometimes we pass one row of covariates to a likelihood function. If so, it may come in as a normal vector, not a matrix. If a normal vector, ncol(X) does not work.

Value

An integer scalar

negexp.like	Negative exponential likelihood
-------------	---------------------------------

Description

Computes the negative exponential distance function.

Usage

```
negexp.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

<code>a</code>	A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If <code>a</code> is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in <code>a</code> are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
<code>dist</code>	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
<code>covars</code>	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument <code>dist</code> .
<code>w.hi</code>	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as <code>halfnorm</code> , <code>negexp</code> , and <code>hazrate</code>), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as <code>oneStep</code> and <code>uniform</code>).

Details

The negative exponential likelihood is

$$f(x|\alpha) = \exp(-\alpha x)$$

where α is the slope parameter.

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ ($n = \text{length } \text{dist}$; $k = \text{number of cases} = \text{nrow}(a)$) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; $b = \text{number of canonical parameters in the likelihood}$; $k = \text{number of cases}$). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, other `<likelihood>.like` functions

Examples

```
d <- seq(0, 100, length=100)
covs <- matrix(1,length(d),1)
negexp.like(log(0.01), d, covs)

# Changing slope parameter
plot(d, negexp.like(log(0.1), d, covs)$L.unscaled, type="l", col="red")
lines(d, negexp.like(log(0.05), d, covs)$L.unscaled, col="blue")
```

<code>negexp.start.limits</code>	<i>Start and limit values for negexp distance function</i>
----------------------------------	--

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the negative exponential distance function.

Usage

```
negexp.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

<code>ml</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
-----------------	---

Value

A list containing the following components

<code>start</code>	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
<code>lowlimit</code>	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
<code>uplimit</code>	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
<code>names</code>	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

nLL

*Negative log likelihood of distances***Description**

Return the negative log likelihood of observed detection distances given a likelihood and the estimated parameters.

Usage

```
nLL(a, ml, verbosity = 0)
```

Arguments

a	A vector of likelihood parameter values. Length and meaning depend on <code>ml\$series</code> and <code>ml\$expansions</code> . If no expansion terms were called for (i.e., <code>ml\$expansions = 0</code>), the distance likelihood contain one or two canonical parameters (see Details). If one or more expansions are called for, coefficients for the expansion terms follow coefficients for the canonical parameters. i.e., length of this vector is $(\text{num Covars incl. intercept}) + \text{expansions} + 1 * (\text{like \%in\% c("hazrate")})$.
ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
verbosity	The level of output produced during estimation. <code>verbosity = 0</code> produces no output. Increasing values of <code>verbosity >= 1</code> produce increasing levels of intermediate details. This is mostly used for de-bugging and checking convergence.

Details

Expansion Terms: If `ml$expansions = k` ($k > 0$), the expansion function specified by `ml$series` is called (see for example `cosine.expansion()`). Assuming $h_{ij}(x)$ is the j^{th} expansion term for the i^{th} distance and that $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$ are (estimated) coefficients for the expansion terms, the likelihood contribution for the i^{th} distance is,

$$f(x|a, b, c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k) = f(x|a, b) \left(1 + \sum_{j=1}^k c_j h_{ij}(x) \right).$$

Value

A scalar, the negative of the log likelihood evaluated at parameters a.

See Also

See [halfnorm.like\(\)](#) and links there; [dfuncEstim\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# A halfnorm distance function
fit <- dfuncEstim(sparrowDf, dist~1, likelihood = "halfnorm")
nLL(fit$par, fit, 3)
fit$loglik
ESW(fit)[1]

# Another way, b/c we have pnorm()
d <- distances(fit)
ones <- matrix(1, nrow = length(d), ncol = 1)
l <- halfnorm.like(fit$par, d, ones)
esw <- (pnorm(units::drop_units(fit$w.hi)
  , units::drop_units(fit$w.lo)
  , sd = exp(l$params)) - 0.5) * sqrt(2*pi) * exp(l$params)
-sum(log(l$L.unscaled/esw))

# A third way, b/c we have pnorm() and dnorm().
l2 <- dnorm(units::drop_units(d), mean = 0, sd = exp(fit$par))
scaler <- pnorm(units::drop_units(fit$w.hi), mean = 0, sd = exp(fit$par)) - 0.5
-sum(log(l2/scaler))
```

Nlminb

*'nlminb' optimizer***Description**

Call R native function 'nlminb' to perform optimization.

Usage

```
Nlminb(ml, strt.lims)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| ml | Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters. |
| strt.lims | A list containing start, low, and high limits for parameters of the requested likelihood. This list is typically produced by a call to startLimits() . |

Value

A list with following named components:

- par = parameters
- loglik = objective function value at minimum
- convergence = 0 for yes, other for no
- iterations = number of iterations
- evaluations = function evaluations
- message = a convergence message
- varcovar = a variance covariance matrix of parameters
- limits = low and high limits

observationType	<i>Type of observations</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------

Description

Return the type of observations (single or multiple observers) represented in either a fitted distance function or Rdistance data frame.

Usage

```
observationType(x)
```

Arguments

x	Either an estimated distance function, output by dfuncEstim, or an Rdistance nested data frame, output by RdistDf.
---	--

Details

This function is a simple helper function. If x is an estimated distance object, it polls the obsType attribute of the object's Rdistance data frame. If x is an Rdistance nested data frame, it polls the obsType attribute.

Value

One of the following values: "single", "1given2", "2given1", or "both". If observation type has not been assigned, return is NULL.

oneBsIter

*Calculations for one bootstrap iteration***Description**

Performs density and abundance estimation for one bootstrap iteration.

Usage

```
oneBsIter(
  object,
  area,
  propUnitSurveyed,
  pb,
  plot.bs,
  plotCovValues,
  warn = FALSE,
  asymptoticSE = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| object | A fitted Rdistance distance function (class c("dfunc")), normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> , or an Rdistance abundance object (class c("abund", "dfunc")), normally produced by a call to <code>abundEstim()</code> . If the latter, Rdistance adds bootstrap iterations to existing iterations in object. |
| area | A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If area is NULL (the default), area will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If area is not NULL, it must have measurement units assigned by the units package. The units on area must be convertible to squared output units. Units on area must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on area must be convertible to "foo^2" by the units package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable. |
| propUnitSurveyed | A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, propUnitSurveyed = 1. If only a single side of line transects were observed, set propUnitSurveyed = 0.5. For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in x. |
| pb | A progress bar created with <code>progress::progress_bar\$new()</code> . |
| plot.bs | Logical. Whether to plot bootstrap estimate of detection function. A plot must already exist because this uses lines. |
| plotCovValues | Data frame containing values of covariates to plot. Ignored if plot.bs is FALSE. |

warn	A logical scalar specifying whether to issue an R warning if the estimation did not converge or if one or more parameter estimates are at their boundaries. For estimation, warn should generally be left at its default value of TRUE. When computing bootstrap confidence intervals, setting warn = FALSE turns off annoying warnings when an iteration does not converge. Regardless of warn, after completion all messages about convergence and boundary conditions are printed by print.dfunc, print.abund, and plot.dfunc.
asymptoticSE	Logical variable for whether to calculate asymptotic standard errors. The default (TRUE) estimates an asymptotic variance-covariance matrix for parameters based on the likelihood's Hessian (2nd derivative). If maximization has been performed by Nlminb or HookesJeeves, the asymptotic Hessian is estimated using numeric second derivatives of the likelihood at the maximum likelihood solution. If maximization was performed by Optim, the last Hessian of the maximization is returned by Optim and used (see varcovarEstim() and secondDeriv()). Asymptotic standard errors will not be estimated if asymptoticSE = FALSE. If not estimated, bootstrap iterations will run faster because the numeric Hessian, which is discarded during bootstrapping, will not be calculated every iteration.

Value

A data frame containing density and abundance and other relevant statistics for one iteration of the bootstrap.

See Also

[bootstrap\(\)](#); [abundEstim\(\)](#)

oneStep.like

Mixture of two uniforms likelihood

Description

Compute likelihood function for a mixture of two uniform distributions.

Usage

```
oneStep.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

a A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If **a** is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in **a** are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.

<code>dist</code>	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
<code>covars</code>	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument <code>dist</code> .
<code>w.hi</code>	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as <code>halfnorm</code> , <code>negexp</code> , and <code>hazrate</code>), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as <code>oneStep</code> and <code>uniform</code>).

Details

Rdistance's oneStep likelihood is a mixture of two non-overlapping uniform distributions. The 'oneStep' density function is

$$f(d|p, \theta) = \frac{p}{\theta} I(0 \leq d \leq \theta) + \frac{1-p}{w-\theta} I(\theta \leq d \leq w),$$

where $I(x)$ is the indicator function for event x , and w is the nominal strip width (i.e., `w.hi` - `w.lo` in Rdistance). The unknown parameters to be estimated are θ and p (w is fixed - given by the user).

Covariates influence values of θ via a log link function, i.e., $\theta = e^{x'b}$, where x is the vector of covariate values associated with distance d , and b is the vector of estimated coefficients.

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ (n = length `dist`; k = number of cases = `nrow(a)`) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; b = number of canonical parameters in the likelihood; k = number of cases). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

References

Peter F. Craigmile & D.M. Tirrerington (1997) "Parameter estimation for finite mixtures of uniform distributions", *Communications in Statistics - Theory and Methods*, 26:8, 1981-1995, DOI: 10.1080/03610929708832026

A. Hussein & J. Liu (2009) "Parametric estimation of mixtures of two uniform distributions", *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 79:4, 395-410, DOI:10.1080/00949650701810406

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, other `<likelihood>.like` functions

Examples

```
# Fit oneStep to simulated data
whi <- 250
T <- 100 # true threshold
p <- 0.85
n <- 200
x <- c( runif(n*p, min=0, max=T), runif(n*(1-p), min=T, max=whi))
x <- setUnits(x, "m")
tranID <- sample(rep(1:10, each=n/10), replace=FALSE)
detectDf <- data.frame(transect = tranID, dist = x)
siteDf <- data.frame(transect = 1:10
                    , length = rep(setUnits(10,"m"), 10))
distDf <- RdistDf(siteDf, detectDf)

# Estimation
## Not run:
# The following requires ~8 seconds > CRAN requirements
fit <- dfuncEstim(distDf
                 , formula = dist ~ 1
                 , likelihood = "oneStep"
                 , w.hi = setUnits(whi, "m")
                 )

plot(fit)
thetaHat <- exp(coef(fit)[1])
pHat <- coef(fit)[2]
data.frame(True = c(T, p), Estimated = c(thetaHat, pHat))

summary(abundEstim(fit, ci=NULL))

## End(Not run)
```

oneStep.start.limits *oneStep likelihood start and limit values*

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the oneStep distance function.

Usage

```
oneStep.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

ml Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to [parseModel\(\)](#). Rdistance 'fitted objects'

are typically produced by calls to `dfuncEstim()`. 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A list containing the following components

<code>start</code>	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
<code>lowlimit</code>	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
<code>uplimit</code>	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
<code>names</code>	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

See Also

[oneStep.like\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# make 'model list' object
# Boundary is 10, p is 100 / 120 = 0.833
library(Rdistance)
whi <- 50
x <- c( runif(100, min=0, max=10), runif(20, min=10, max=whi))
x <- setUnits(x, "m")
detectDf <- data.frame(transect = 1, dist = x)
siteDf <- data.frame(transect = 1, length = setUnits(10,"m"))
distDf <- RdistDf(siteDf, detectDf)
ml <- parseModel(distDf
  , formula = dist ~ 1
  , w.lo = 0
  , w.hi = setUnits(whi, "m")
)

sl <- oneStep.start.limits(ml)
hist(x, n = 20)
abline(v = exp(sl$start["(Intercept)"])))
```

Optim	<i>'optim' optimizer</i>
-------	--------------------------

Description

Call R native function 'optim' to perform optimization.

Usage

```
Optim(ml, strt.lims)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
strt.lims	A list containing start, low, and high limits for parameters of the requested likelihood. This list is typically produced by a call to startLimits() .

Value

A list with following named components:

- par = parameters
- loglik = objective function value at minimum
- convergence = 0 for yes, other for no
- iterations = number of iterations
- evaluations = function evaluations
- message = a convergence message
- varcovar = a variance covariance matrix of parameters
- limits = low and high limits

Oscars

*OSCARS optimizer***Description**

Uses the OSCARS optimization algorithm implemented in `OSCARS::oscars()` to perform maximum likelihood estimation of a distance function.

Usage

```
Oscars(ml, strt.lims)
```

Arguments

<code>ml</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.
<code>strt.lims</code>	A list containing start, low, and high limits for parameters of the requested likelihood. This list is typically produced by a call to <code>startLimits()</code> .

Value

A list with following named components:

- `par` = parameters
- `loglik` = objective function value at minimum
- `convergence` = 0 for yes, other for no
- `iterations` = number of iterations
- `evaluations` = function evaluations
- `message` = a convergence message
- `varcovar` = a variance covariance matrix of parameters
- `limits` = low and high limits

oscarsLimits

Modify start and limits for OSCARS optimization

Description

Improve (tighten) the starting values and limits for the OSCARS algorithm. OSCARS needs tighter bounds because of it's global nature.

Usage

```
oscarsLimits(origLims, ml)
```

Arguments

origLims	A list of \$start, \$low, and \$high components that are vectors of the same length. \$start are the starting values, \$low are the lower bounds, and \$high are the upper bounds on the coefficients in the model.
ml	A "model list" containing the problem parameters.

Details

Despite several likelihoods being discontinuous, gradient based methods do amazingly well. We improve (tighten) the uninformed start limits by estimating the model using Newton-Raphson and constructing limits from those estimates.

Value

A list just like curLims with improved start and limits. In addition, the return contains a couple quantities used later to assess convergence (i.e., \$startConvergence and \$startEvaluations)

parseModel

Parse Rdistance model

Description

Parse an 'Rdistance' formula and produce a list containing all model parameters. This routine is not normally called directly by the user, but it might be helpful in simulations. It is called internally from the model estimation routines.

Usage

```

parseModel(
  data,
  formula = NULL,
  likelihood = "halfnorm",
  w.lo = 0,
  w.hi = NULL,
  expansions = 0,
  series = "cosine",
  x.scl = w.lo,
  g.x.scl = 1,
  outputUnits = NULL,
  asymptoticSE = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

data	An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function <code>RdistDf()</code> creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. <code>is.RdistDf()</code> checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
formula	A standard formula object. For example, <code>dist ~ 1</code> , <code>dist ~ covar1 + covar2</code> . The left-hand side (before <code>~</code>) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including <code>+ groupsize(<variable>)</code> in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.
likelihood	String specifying the likelihood to fit. Built-in likelihoods at present are "halfnorm", "hazrate", and "negexp".
w.lo	Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If w.lo is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
w.hi	Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in dist. This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., NULL), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If w.hi is specified, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of terms in series to compute. Depending on the series, this could be 0 through 5. The default of 0 equates to no expansion terms of any type. No expansion terms are allowed (i.e., expansions is forced to 0) if covariates are present in the detection function (i.e., right-hand side of formula includes something other than 1).

series	If expansions > 0, this string specifies the type of expansion to use. Valid values at present are 'simple', 'hermite', and 'cosine'.
x.scl	The x coordinate (a distance) at which the detection function will be scaled. <code>g.x.scl</code> can be a distance or the string "max". When <code>x.scl</code> is specified (i.e., not 0 or "max"), it must have measurement units assigned. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
g.x.scl	Height of the distance function at coordinate x. The distance function will be scaled so that $g(x.scl) = g.x.scl$. If <code>g.x.scl</code> is not a data frame, it must be a numeric value (vector of length 1) between 0 and 1.
outputUnits	A string specifying the symbolic measurement units for results. Valid units are listed in <code>units::valid_udunits()</code> . The strings for common distance symbolic units are: "m" - meters, "ft" - feet, "cm" - centimeters, "mm" - millimeters, "mi" - miles, "nmile" - nautical miles ("nm" is nano meters), "in" - inches, "yd" - yards, "km" - kilometers, "fathom" - fathoms, "chains" - chains, and "furlong" - furlongs. If <code>outputUnits</code> is unspecified (NULL), output units will be the same as those on distances in data.
asymptoticSE	Logical variable for whether to calculate asymptotic standard errors. The default (TRUE) estimates an asymptotic variance-covariance matrix for parameters based on the likelihood's Hessian (2nd derivative). If maximization has been performed by <code>Nlminb</code> or <code>HookesJeeves</code> , the asymptotic Hessian is estimated using numeric second derivatives of the likelihood at the maximum likelihood solution. If maximization was performed by <code>Optim</code> , the last Hessian of the maximization is returned by <code>Optim</code> and used (see <code>varcovarEstim()</code> and <code>secondDeriv()</code>). Asymptotic standard errors will not be estimated if <code>asymptoticSE</code> = FALSE. If not estimated, bootstrap iterations will run faster because the numeric Hessian, which is discarded during bootstrapping, will not be calculated every iteration.

Value

An Rdistance model frame, which is an object of class "dfunc". Rdistance model frames are lists containing distance model components but not estimates. Model frames contain everything necessary to fit an Rdistance mode, such as covariates, minimum and maximum distances, the form of the likelihood, number of expansions, etc. Rdistance model frames contain a subset of fitted Rdistance model components.

See Also

`RdistDf()`, which returns an Rdistance *data* frame; `dfuncEstim()`, which returns an Rdistance *fitted* model.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)

m1 <- Rdistance::parseModel(sparrowDf
  , formula = dist ~ 1 + observer + groupsize(groupsize)
  , likelihood = "halfnorm")
```

```

    , w.lo = 0
    , w.hi = NULL
    , series = "cosine"
    , x.scl = 0
    , g.x.scl = 1
    , outputUnits = "m"
  )
class(ml) # 'dfunc', but no estimated coefficients
print(ml)
print.default(ml)

```

perpDists

*Compute off-transect distances from sighting distances and angles***Description**

Computes off-transect (also called 'perpendicular') distances from measures of sighting distance and sighting angle.

Usage

```
perpDists(sightDist, sightAngle, data)
```

Arguments

sightDist	Character, name of column in data that contains the observed or sighting distances from the observer to the detected objects.
sightAngle	Character, name of column in data that contains the observed or sighting angles from the line transect to the detected objects. Angles must be measured in degrees.
data	data.frame object containing sighting distance and sighting angle.

Details

If observers recorded sighting distance and sighting angle (as is often common in line transect surveys), use this function to convert to off-transect distances, the required input data for `dfunc.estim`.

Value

A vector of off-transect (or perpendicular) distances. Units are the same as `sightDist`.

References

Buckland, S.T., Anderson, D.R., Burnham, K.P. and Laake, J.L. 1993. *Distance Sampling: Estimating Abundance of Biological Populations*. Chapman and Hall, London.

See Also[dfuncEstim\(\)](#)**Examples**

```
# Load the example dataset of sparrow detections from package
data(sparrowDetectionData)
# Compute perpendicular, off-transect distances from the observer's sight distance and angle
sparrowDetectionData$perpDist <- perpDists(sightDist="sightdist", sightAngle="sightangle",
                                           data=sparrowDetectionData)
```

plot.dfunc

*Plot method for distance (detection) functions***Description**

Plot method for objects of class 'dfunc'. Objects of class 'dfunc' are estimated distance functions produced by [dfuncEstim\(\)](#).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
plot(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x An estimated detection function object, normally produced by calling [dfuncEstim\(\)](#).

... Arguments passed on to [plot.dfunc.param](#)

include.zero Boolean value specifying whether to include 0 on the x-axis of the plot. A value of TRUE will include 0 on the left hand end of the x-axis regardless of the range of distances. A value of FALSE will plot only the observation strip (w.lo to w.hi).

nbins Internally, this function uses `hist` to compute histogram bars for the plot. This argument is the `breaks` argument to `hist`. This can be either a vector giving the breakpoints between bars, the suggested number of bars (a single number), a string naming an algorithm to compute the number of bars, or a function to compute the number of bars. See [hist\(\)](#) for all options.

newdata Data frame (similar to `newdata` parameter of [lm\(\)](#)) containing new values for covariates in the distance function. One distance function is computed and plotted for each row in the data frame. If `newdata` is NULL, a single distance function is plotted for mean values of all numeric covariates and mode values for all factor covariates.

legend Logical scalar for whether to include a legend. If TRUE, a legend will be included on the plot detailing the covariate values used to generate the plot.

- plotBars** Logical scalar for whether to plot the histogram of distances behind the distance function. If FALSE, no histogram is plotted, only the distance function line(s).
- xlab** Label for the x-axis
- ylab** Label for the y-axis
- density** If plotBars=TRUE, a vector giving the density of shading lines, in lines per inch, for the bars underneath the distance function, repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. Values of NULL or a number strictly less than 0 mean solid fill using colors from parameter col. If density = 0, bars are not filled and only the borders are rendered. If density > 0, bars are shaded with colors and angles from parameters col and angle.
- angle** When density > 0, the slope of bar shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise), repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars.
- col** A vector of bar fill colors or line colors when bars are drawn and density != 0, repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. Also used for the bar borders when border = TRUE.
- border** The color of bar borders when bars are plotted, repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. A value of NA or FALSE means no borders. If bars are shaded with lines (i.e., density>0), border = TRUE uses the same color for the border as for the shading lines. Otherwise, fill color or shaded line color are specified in col while border color is specified in border.
- vertLines** Logical scalar specifying whether to plot vertical lines at w.lo and w.hi from 0 to the distance function.
- col.dfunc** Color of the distance function(s). If only one distance function (one line) is being plotted, the default color is "red". If covariates or newdata are present, the default value uses graphics::rainbow(n), where n is the number of plotted distance functions. Otherwise, col.dfunc is replicated to the required length. Plot all distance functions in the same color by setting col.dfunc to a scalar. Plot blue-red pairs of distance functions by setting col.dfunc = c("blue", "red"). Etc.
- lty.dfunc** Line type of the distance function(s). If covariates or newdata is present, the default uses line types to 1:n, where n is the number of plotted distance functions. Otherwise, lty.dfunc is replicated to the required length. Plot solid lines by specifying lty.dfunc = 1. Plot solid-dashed line pairs by specifying lty.dfunc = c(1,2). Etc.
- lwd.dfunc** Line width of the distance function(s), replicated to the required length. Default is 2 for all lines.

Details

If plotBars is TRUE, a scaled histogram is plotted and the estimated distance function is plotted over the top of it. When bars are plotted, this routine uses graphics::barplot for setting up the initial plotting region and most parameters to graphics::barplot can be specified (exceptions noted above in description of '...').

The form of the likelihood and any series expansions is printed in the main title (overwrite this with main="<my title>"). Convergence of the distance function is checked. If the distance function did

not converge, a warning is printed over the top of the histogram. If one or more parameter estimates are at their limits (likely indicating non-convergence or poor fit), another warning is printed.

Value

The input distance function is returned, with two additional components that can be used to reconstruct the plotted bars. (To obtain values of the plotted distance functions, use `predict` with `type = "distances"`.) The additional components are:

`barHeights` A vector containing the scaled bar heights drawn on the plot.

`barWidths` A vector or scalar of the bar widths drawn on the plot, with measurement units.

Re-plot the bars with `barplot( return$barHeights, width = return$barWidths )`.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [print.dfunc\(\)](#), [print.abund\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Simulated RdistDf
set.seed(87654)
x <- rnorm(1000, mean=0, sd=20)
x <- x[x >= 0]
x <- setUnits(x, "ft")
Df <- data.frame(transectID = "A"
                 , distance = x
                 ) |>
  dplyr::nest_by( transectID
                 , .key = "detections") |>
  dplyr::mutate(length = setUnits(1,"mi"))
attr(Df, "detectionColumn") <- "detections"
attr(Df, "obsType") <- "single"
attr(Df, "transType") <- "line"
attr(Df, "effortColumn") <- "length"
is.RdistDf(Df) # TRUE

dfunc <- Df |> dfuncEstim(distance ~ 1, likelihood="halfnorm")
plot(dfunc)
plot(dfunc, nbins=25)

# showing effects of plot parameters
plot(dfunc
     , col=c("red","blue","orange")
     , border="black"
     , xlab="Off-transect distance"
     , ylab="Prob"
     , vertLines = FALSE
     , main="Showing plot params")

plot(dfunc
     , col="purple"
```

```

    , density=30
    , angle=c(-45,0,45)
    , cex.axis=1.5
    , cex.lab=2
    , ylab="Probability")

plot(dfunc
     , col=c("grey","lightgrey")
     , border=NA)

plot(dfunc
     , col="grey"
     , border=0
     , col.dfunc="blue"
     , lty.dfunc=2
     , lwd.dfunc=4
     , vertLines=FALSE)

plot(dfunc
     , plotBars=FALSE
     , cex.axis=1.5
     , col.axis="blue")
rug(distances(dfunc))

# un-equal bin widths, nbins must span distances
plot(dfunc
     , nbins = c(0,2.5,5,7.5,10,15,25,50,70)
     )

# Plot showing f(0)
hist(distances(dfunc)
     , n = 40
     , border = NA
     , prob = TRUE)
x <- seq(dfunc$w.lo, dfunc$w.hi, length=200)
g <- predict(dfunc, type="dfunc", distances = x, newdata = data.frame(a=1))
f <- g[,1] / ESW(dfunc)[1]

# Check integration:
sum(diff(x)*(f[-1] + f[-length(f)]) / 2) # Trapezoid rule; should be 1.0
lines(x, f) # hence, 1/f(0) = ESW

# Covariates: detection by observer
data(sparrowDfuncObserver) # pre-estimated model

obsLevs <- levels(sparrowDfuncObserver$data$observer)
plot(sparrowDfuncObserver
     , newdata = data.frame(observer = obsLevs)
     , vertLines = FALSE
     , col.dfunc = heat.colors(length(obsLevs))
     , col = c("grey","lightgrey")
     , border=NA
     , main="Detection by observer")

```

plot.dfunc.para	<i>Plot parametric distance functions</i>
-----------------	---

Description

Plot method for parametric line and point transect distance functions.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc.para'
plot(
  x,
  include.zero = FALSE,
  nbins = "Sturges",
  newdata = NULL,
  legend = TRUE,
  vertLines = TRUE,
  plotBars = TRUE,
  circles = FALSE,
  density = -1,
  angle = 45,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  border = TRUE,
  col = "grey85",
  col.dfunc = NULL,
  lty.dfunc = NULL,
  lwd.dfunc = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	An estimated detection function object, normally produced by calling dfuncEstim() .
<code>include.zero</code>	Boolean value specifying whether to include 0 on the x-axis of the plot. A value of TRUE will include 0 on the left hand end of the x-axis regardless of the range of distances. A value of FALSE will plot only the observation strip (<code>w.lo</code> to <code>w.hi</code>).
<code>nbins</code>	Internally, this function uses <code>hist</code> to compute histogram bars for the plot. This argument is the <code>breaks</code> argument to <code>hist</code> . This can be either a vector giving the breakpoints between bars, the suggested number of bars (a single number), a string naming an algorithm to compute the number of bars, or a function to compute the number of bars. See hist() for all options.

newdata	Data frame (similar to newdata parameter of <code>lm()</code>) containing new values for covariates in the distance function. One distance function is computed and plotted for each row in the data frame. If newdata is NULL, a single distance function is plotted for mean values of all numeric covariates and mode values for all factor covariates.
legend	Logical scalar for whether to include a legend. If TRUE, a legend will be included on the plot detailing the covariate values used to generate the plot.
vertLines	Logical scalar specifying whether to plot vertical lines at <code>w.lo</code> and <code>w.hi</code> from 0 to the distance function.
plotBars	Logical scalar for whether to plot the histogram of distances behind the distance function. If FALSE, no histogram is plotted, only the distance function line(s).
circles	Logical scalar requesting the location of detection distances be plotted. If TRUE, open circles are plotted at predicted distance function heights associated with all detection distances. For computational simplicity, all distances are plotted for EVERY covariate class even though observed distances belong to only one covariate class. If FALSE, circles are not plotted.
density	If <code>plotBars=TRUE</code> , a vector giving the density of shading lines, in lines per inch, for the bars underneath the distance function, repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. Values of NULL or a number strictly less than 0 mean solid fill using colors from parameter <code>col</code> . If <code>density = 0</code> , bars are not filled and only the borders are rendered. If <code>density > 0</code> , bars are shaded with colors and angles from parameters <code>col</code> and <code>angle</code> .
angle	When <code>density > 0</code> , the slope of bar shading lines, given as an angle in degrees (counter-clockwise), repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars.
xlab	Label for the x-axis
ylab	Label for the y-axis
border	The color of bar borders when bars are plotted, repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. A value of NA or FALSE means no borders. If bars are shaded with lines (i.e., <code>density>0</code>), <code>border = TRUE</code> uses the same color for the border as for the shading lines. Otherwise, fill color or shaded line color are specified in <code>col</code> while border color is specified in <code>border</code> .
col	A vector of bar fill colors or line colors when bars are drawn and <code>density != 0</code> , repeated as necessary to exceed the number of bars. Also used for the bar borders when <code>border = TRUE</code> .
col.dfunc	Color of the distance function(s). If only one distance function (one line) is being plotted, the default color is "red". If covariates or newdata are present, the default value uses <code>graphics::rainbow(n)</code> , where <code>n</code> is the number of plotted distance functions. Otherwise, <code>col.dfunc</code> is replicated to the required length. Plot all distance functions in the same color by setting <code>col.dfunc</code> to a scalar. Plot blue-red pairs of distance functions by setting <code>col.dfunc = c("blue", "red")</code> . Etc.
lty.dfunc	Line type of the distance function(s). If covariates or newdata is present, the default uses line types to <code>1:n</code> , where <code>n</code> is the number of plotted distance functions. Otherwise, <code>lty.dfunc</code> is replicated to the required length. Plot solid lines by specifying <code>lty.dfunc = 1</code> . Plot solid-dashed line pairs by specifying <code>lty.dfunc = c(1, 2)</code> . Etc.

lwd.dfunc	Line width of the distance function(s), replicated to the required length. Default is 2 for all lines.
...	When bars are plotted, this routine uses <code>graphics::barplot</code> to draw the plotting region and bars. When bars are not plotted, this routine sets up the plot with <code>graphics::plot</code>can be any argument to <code>barplot</code> or <code>plot</code> EXCEPT <code>width</code> , <code>ylim</code> , <code>xlim</code> , <code>density</code> , <code>angle</code> , and <code>space</code> . For example, set the main title with <code>main = "Main Title"</code> .

Value

The input distance function is returned, with two additional components than can be used to reconstruct the plotted bars. (To obtain values of the plotted distance functions, use `predict` with `type = "distances"`.) The additional components are:

barHeights	A vector containing the scaled bar heights drawn on the plot.
barWidths	A vector or scalar of the bar widths drawn on the plot, with measurement units.

Re-plot the bars with `barplot( return$barHeights, width = return$barWidths )`.

See Also

[plot.dfunc\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Simulated data
set.seed(87654)
x <- rnorm(1000, mean=0, sd=20)
x <- x[x >= 0]
x <- setUnits(x, "ft")
Df <- data.frame(transectID = "A"
                 , distance = x
                 ) |>
  dplyr::nest_by( transectID
                 , .key = "detections") |>
  dplyr::mutate(length = setUnits(1,"mi"))
attr(Df, "detectionColumn") <- "detections"
attr(Df, "obsType") <- "single"
attr(Df, "transType") <- "line"
attr(Df, "effortColumn") <- "length"
is.RdistDf(Df) # TRUE

# Estimation
dfunc <- dfuncEstim(Df
                   , formula = distance~1
                   , likelihood="halfnorm")

plot(dfunc)
plot(dfunc, nbins=25)
```

predDensity	<i>Density on transects</i>
-------------	-----------------------------

Description

An internal prediction method for computing density on the sampled transects.

Usage

```
predDensity(object, propUnitSurveyed = 1)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
propUnitSurveyed	A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, <code>propUnitSurveyed = 1</code> . If only a single side of line transects were observed, set <code>propUnitSurveyed = 0.5</code> . For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in <code>x</code> .

Value

A data frame containing the original data used to fit the distance function, plus an additional column containing the density of individuals on each transect.

Examples

```
data(sparrowDfuncObserver)
predict(sparrowDfuncObserver, type="density")
```

predDfuncs	<i>Predict distance functions</i>
------------	-----------------------------------

Description

An internal prediction function to predict a distance function. This version allows for matrix inputs and uses matrix operations, and is thus faster than earlier looping versions.

Usage

```
predDfuncs(object, params, distances, isSmooth)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
params	A matrix of distance function parameters. Rows are observations, columns contain the set of parameters (canonical and expansion) for each observation.
distances	A vector or 1-column matrix of distances at which to evaluate distance functions, when distance functions are requested. distances must have measurement units. Any distances outside the observation strip (<code>object\$w.lo</code> to <code>object\$w.hi</code>) are discarded. If distances is NULL, a sequence of <code>getOption("Rdistance_intEvalPts")</code> (default 101) evenly spaced distances between <code>object\$w.lo</code> and <code>object\$w.hi</code> (inclusive) is used.
isSmooth	Logical. TRUE if the distance function is smoothed (and hence has no parameters).

Value

A matrix of distance function values, of size `length(distances) X nrow(params)`. Each row of params is associated with a column, i.e., a different distance function. Distances are associated with rows, i.e., use `matplot(d,return)` to plot values on separate distance functions specified by rows of params.

predict.dfunc	<i>Predict distance functions</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Predict either likelihood parameters, distance functions, site-specific density, or site-specific abundance from estimated distance function objects.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
predict(
  object,
  newdata = NULL,
  type = c("parameters"),
  distances = NULL,
  propUnitSurveyed = 1,
  area = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
--------	--

newdata	A data frame containing new values of the covariates at which to evaluate the distance functions. If newdata is NULL, distance functions are evaluated at values of the observed covariates and results in one prediction per distance or transect (see parameter type). If newdata is not NULL and the model does not contain covariates, this routine returns one prediction for each row in newdata, but columns and values in newdata are ignored.
type	The type of predictions desired. • If type == "parameters": Returned value is a matrix of predicted (canonical) parameters of the likelihood function. If newdata is NULL, return contains one parameter value for every detection distance in object\$mf (distances in object\$mf are between object\$w.lo and object\$w.hi and non-missing). If newdata is not NULL, returned vector has one parameter for every row in newdata. Parameter distances is ignored when type == "parameters". Canonical parameters (non-expansion terms) are returned on the response (inverse-link) scale. Raw canonical parameters in object\$par are stored in the link scale. Expansion term parameters use the identity link, so their value in the output equals their value in object\$par. • If type == "likelihood": Returned value is a matrix of unscaled likelihood values for all observed distances in object\$mf, i.e., raw distance functions evaluated at the observed distances. Parameters newdata and distances are ignored when type is "likelihood". The negative log likelihood of the full data set is <code>-sum(log(predict(object,type="likelihood") / effectiveDistance(object)))</code>. • If type == "dfuncs" or "dfunc": Returned value is a matrix whose columns contain scaled distance functions. The distance functions in each column are evaluated at distances in argument distances, not at the observed distances in object\$mf. The number of distance functions returned (i.e., number of columns) depends on newdata as follows: – If newdata is NULL, one distance function will be returned for every detection in object\$mf that has valid covariate values. – If newdata is not NULL, one distance function will be returned for each observation (row) in newdata. • If type == "density" or "abundance": Returned object is a tibble containing predicted density and abundance on the area surveyed by each transect. If object is a smoothed distance function, it does not have parameters and this routine will only return scaled distance functions, densities, or abundances. That is, type = "parameters" when object is smoothed does not make sense and the smoothed distance function estimate will be returned if type does not equal "density" or "abundance".
distances	A vector or 1-column matrix of distances at which to evaluate distance functions, when distance functions are requested. distances must have measurement units. Any distances outside the observation strip (object\$w.lo to object\$w.hi) are discarded. If distances is NULL, a sequence of <code>getOption("Rdistance_intEvalPts")</code> (default 101) evenly spaced distances between object\$w.lo and object\$w.hi (inclusive) is used.

propUnitSurveyed	A scalar or vector of real numbers between 0 and 1. The proportion of the default sampling unit that was surveyed. If both sides of line transects were observed, propUnitSurveyed = 1. If only a single side of line transects were observed, set propUnitSurveyed = 0.5. For point transects, this should be set to the proportion of each circle that was observed. Length must either be 1 or the total number of transects in x.
area	A scalar containing the total area of inference. Usually, this is study area size. If area is NULL (the default), area will be set to 1 square unit of the output units and density estimates will be produced. If area is not NULL, it must have measurement units assigned by the units package. The units on area must be convertible to squared output units. Units on area must be two-dimensional. For example, if output units are "foo", units on area must be convertible to "foo^2" by the units package. Units of "km^2", "cm^2", "ha", "m^2", "acre", "mi^2", and several others are acceptable.
...	Included for compatibility with generic predict methods.

Value

A matrix containing predictions:

- If type is **"parameters"**, the returned matrix contains likelihood parameters. The extent of the first dimension (rows) in the returned matrix is equal to either the number of detection distances in the observed strip or number of rows in newdata. The returned matrix's second dimension (columns) is the number of parameters in the likelihood plus the number of expansion terms. See the help for each likelihoods to interpret returned parameter values. All parameters are returned on the inverse-link scale; i.e., *exponential* for canonical parameters and *identity* for expansion terms.
- If type is **"dfuncs" or "dfunc"**, columns of the returned matrix contains detection functions (i.e., $g(x)$). The extent of the first dimension (number of rows) is either the number of distances specified in distances or options()\$Rdistance_intEvalPts if distances is not specified. The extent of the second dimension (number of columns) is:
 - the number of detections with non-missing distances: if newdata is NULL.
 - the number of rows in newdata if newdata is specified.

All distance functions in columns of the return are scaled to object\$g.x.scale at object\$x.scl.

The returned matrix has the following additional attributes:

- attr(return, "distances") is the vector of distances used to predict the function in return. Either the input distances object or the computed sequence of distances when distances is NULL.
- attr(return, "x0") is the vector of distances at which each distance function in return was scaled. i.e., the vector of x.scl.
- attr(return, "g.x.scl") is the height of $g(x)$ (the distance function) at $x0$.
- If type is **"density" or "abundance"**, the return is a tibble containing density and abundance estimates by transect. All transects in the input data (i.e., object\$data) are included, even those with missing lengths. Columns in the tibble are:
 - transect ID: the grouping factor of the original RdistDf object.

- individualsSeen: sum of non-missing group sizes on that transect.
- avgPdetect: average probability of detection over groups sighted on that transect.
- effort: size of the area surveyed by that transect.
- density: density of individuals in the area surveyed by the transect.
- abundance: abundance of individuals in the area surveyed by the transect.

See Also

[halfnorm.like\(\)](#), [negexp.like\(\)](#), [hazrate.like\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data("sparrowDf")

# For dimension checks:
nd <- getOption("Rdistance_intEvalPts")

# No covariates
dfuncObs <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(formula = dist ~ 1
                                   , w.hi = units::as_units(100, "m"))

n <- nrow(dfuncObs$mf)
p <- predict(dfuncObs) # parameters
all(dim(p) == c(n, 1))

# values in newdata ignored because no covariates
p <- predict(dfuncObs, newdata = data.frame(x = 1:5))
all(dim(p) == c(5, 1))

# Distance functions in columns, one per observation
p <- predict(dfuncObs, type = "dfunc")
all(dim(p) == c(nd, n))

d <- setUnits(c(0, 20, 40), "ft")
p <- predict(dfuncObs, distances = d, type = "dfunc")
all(dim(p) == c(3, n))

p <- predict(dfuncObs
            , newdata = data.frame(x = 1:5)
            , distances = d
            , type = "dfunc")
all(dim(p) == c(3, 5))

# Covariates
data(sparrowDfuncObserver) # pre-estimated object
## Not run:
# Command to generate 'sparrowDfuncObserver'
sparrowDfuncObserver <- sparrowDf |>
  dfuncEstim(formula = dist ~ observer
            , likelihood = "hazrate")

## End(Not run)
```

```

predict(sparrowDfuncObserver) # n X 2

Observers <- data.frame(observer = levels(sparrowDf$observer))
predict(sparrowDfuncObserver, newdata = Observers) # 5 X 2

predict(sparrowDfuncObserver, type = "dfunc") # nd X n
predict(sparrowDfuncObserver, newdata = Observers, type = "dfunc") # nd X 5
d <- setUnits(c(0, 150, 400), "ft")
predict(sparrowDfuncObserver
, newdata = Observers
, distances = d
, type = "dfunc") # 3 X 5

# Density and abundance by transect
predict(sparrowDfuncObserver
, type = "density")

```

predLikelihood	<i>Distance function values at observations</i>
----------------	---

Description

An internal prediction function to predict (compute) the values of distance functions at a set of observed values. Unlike `predDfuncs`, which evaluates distance functions at EVERY input distance, this routine evaluates distance functions at only ONE distance. This is what's appropriate for likelihood computation. This version allows for matrix inputs and uses matrix operations, and is thus faster than earlier looping versions.

Usage

```
predLikelihood(object, params)
```

Arguments

object	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
params	A matrix of distance function parameters. Rows are observations, columns contain the set of parameters (canonical and expansion) for each observation.

Details

Assuming `L` is the vector returned by this function, the negative log likelihood is `-sum(log(L / I), na.rm=T)`, where `I` is the integration constant, or area under the likelihood between `w.lo` and `w.hi`. Note that returned likelihood values for distances less than `w.lo` or greater than `w.hi` are NA; hence, `na.rm=TRUE` in the sum.

Value

A vector of distance function values, of length n = number of observed distances = `length(distances(x))`. Elements in `distances(x)` correspond, in order, to values in the returned vector.

<code>print.abund</code>	<i>Print abundance estimates</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------------

Description

Print an object of class `c("abund", "dfunc")` produced by `abundEstim`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'abund'
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	An object output by <code>abundEstim</code> . This is a distance function object augmented with abundance estimates, and has class <code>c("abund", "dfunc")</code> .
<code>...</code>	Included for compatibility to other print methods. Ignored here.

Value

0 is invisibly returned

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [abundEstim\(\)](#), [summary.dfunc\(\)](#), [print.dfunc\(\)](#), [summary.abund\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowDf)

# Fit half-normal detection function
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(formula=dist~groupsize(groupsize))

# Estimate abundance given a detection function
fit <- abundEstim(object = dfunc
                  , area = setUnits(4105, "km^2")
                  , ci = NULL)

print(fit)
summary(fit)

## Not run:
# Bootstrap confidence intervals (500 iterations)
# Requires ~4 min
```

```

fit <- abundEstim(object = dfunc
                  , area = setUnits(4105, "km^2")
                  , ci = 0.95
                  , plot.bs = TRUE
                  , showProgress = TRUE)

print(fit)
summary(fit)

## End(Not run)

```

print.dfunc

Print method for distance function object

Description

Print method for distance function objects produced by `dfuncEstim`.

Usage

```

## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
print(x, ...)

```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	An estimated detection function object, normally produced by calling <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
<code>...</code>	Included for compatibility with other print methods. Ignored here.

Value

The input distance function (`x`) is returned invisibly.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `plot.dfunc()`, `print.abund()`, `summary.dfunc()`

Examples

```

# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowSiteData)
data(sparrowDetectionData)

# Fit half-normal detection function
sparrowDf <- RdistDf(sparrowSiteData, sparrowDetectionData)
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(formula=dist~1)

dfunc

```

pronghornAreas

*Pronghorn Line Transect Data***Description**

Pronghorn (*Antilocapra americana*) aerial line transect data collected by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department in southeast Wyoming, 2012 - 2019. Data contain transect and pronghorn group detection information collected during five aerial surveys of four herd units during four years. The general survey protocol is described in Johnson et al. (1991) and Smyser et al. (2016), modified for these surveys to use 5 distance bins (specified in Details below) and one observer surveying only one side of the aircraft at a time.

Format

A rowwise tibble containing 300 rows and 6 columns. Each row represents one transect. Column detections contains an embedded data frame of detections made on the transect of that row.

Transects: Transect columns are as follows:

- `transectID`: (character) Unique transect identifier. This is a concatenation of herd, year, and lineLabel.
- `herd`: (character) Abbreviation of the surveyed herd unit. Herds are considered distinct populations.
- `year`: (character) Year of the survey.
- `lineLabel`: (character) Unique identifier of the transect line within herd and year.
- `lineLength`: (numeric, kilometers) Length of the transect.
- `detections`: (nested dataframe) Detections made on the transect (next section). NA if no detections were made on the transect.

Detections: The embedded data frame in column detections contains the following variables:

- `nominalDistBandLabel`: (character) The nominal distance bin identifier assigned by observers in the aircraft at the time of detection based on sighting a group between markers on the aircraft's wing strut.
- `nominalDistBand`: (factor) The nominal distance bin endpoints assuming an aircraft flight height of 300 [ft] above ground level (AGL) at the time of detection.
- `flightHeight`: (numeric, feet) Height of the aircraft AGL at the time of detection.
- `clusterSize`: (integer) Number of pronghorn in the detected group.
- `adjustedMidpoint`: (numeric, meters) The distance bin's midpoint after adjustment for AGL at the time of detection.
- `adjustedBandLower`: (numeric, meters) The lower endpoint of the distance bin after adjustment for AGL at the time of detection.
- `adjustedBandUpper`: (numeric, meters) The upper endpoint of the distance bin after adjustment for AGL at the time of detection.

Details

Study Areas: Researchers placed transects systematically over polygons outlining habitable areas within each herd unit's boundaries. Habitable areas within each herd unit had the following sizes (available in `data(pronghornAreas)`):

Herd	Area
BA	1004 [mi ²]
CE	1420 [mi ²]
CO	444 [mi ²]
MB	3000 [mi ²]

Nominal Distance Bins: Researchers established the following minimum and maximum distances for each off-transect distance bin after multiple flights calibrating wing strut markers against known-width ground objects (e.g., highways). These lower and upper bin endpoints correspond to a flight altitude of 300 [ft] AGL.

Bin	Minimum	Maximum
A	65 [m]	85 [m]
B	85 [m]	110 [m]
C	110 [m]	145 [m]
D	145 [m]	210 [m]
E	210 [m]	265 [m]

Source

These data arise from routine pronghorn population monitoring conducted by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department. Included with permission. Contact: Dr. Jason Carlisle (Rdistance author).

References

- Johnson, B. K., F. G. Lindzey, and R. J. Guenzel. 1991 Use of Aerial Line Transect Surveys to Estimate Pronghorn Populations in Wyoming. *Wildlife Society Bulletin* 19(3):315–321. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/3782522>.
- Smyser, T. J., R. J. Guenzel, C. N. Jacques, and E. O. Garton. 2016. Double-observer evaluation of pronghorn aerial line-transect surveys. *Wildlife Research* 43(6):474–481.

Examples

```
transectInfo <- pronghornDf |>
  dplyr::reframe( herd = herd[1]
    , year = year[1]
    , lineLabel = lineLabel[1]
    , length = lineLength[1]
    , groups = ifelse(is.null(detections), 0, nrow(detections))
    , individuals = ifelse(is.null(detections), 0, sum(detections$clusterSize))
  )
```

```

surveyInfo <- transectInfo |>
  dplyr::group_by(herd, year) |>
  dplyr::summarise(transects = dplyr::n()
    , transectTotLength = sum(length)
    , totGroups = sum(groups)
    , totIndividuals = sum(individuals)
    , zeroTransects = sum(groups == 0)
  )

phDists <- unnest(pronghornDf) # no zero transects: okay for histo
hist(phDists$adjustedMidpoint
  , breaks = c(65,85,110,145,210,265,375)
  , prob = TRUE
  , xlab = "Offtransect distance")

```

RdistanceControls

Rdistance optimization control parameters.

Description

Optimization control parameters are set by calls to `options()` (see examples). Optimization parameters used in *Rdistance* are the following:

- `Rdistance_maxIters`: The maximum number of optimization iterations allowed.
- `Rdistance_evalMax`: The maximum number of objective function evaluations allowed.
- `Rdistance_likeTol`: Minimum change in the likelihood between iterations required optimization to continue. If the likelihood changes by less than this amount, optimization stops and a solution is declared. Iteration continues when likelihood changes exceed this value.
- `Rdistance_coefTol`: Minimum change in model coefficients between iterations for optimization to continue. If the sum of squared coefficient differences changes by less than this amount between iterations, optimization stops and a solution is declared.
- `Rdistance_optimizer`: Normally, this option is not set and the default optimizer routines are used. The default optimization routine for smooth likelihoods (i.e., listed by `differentiableLikelihoods()`) is the gradient-based method in `stats::nlminb()`. The default routine for non-smooth likelihoods is the Nelder-Mead method in `stats::optim()`.

Not often, but occasionally optimizers fail on problem. Switching algorithms can make a poorly behaved distance function converge, particularly when parameters are near their boundaries. If users wish to override the default optimization routine, set this option to one of the following:

- `"optim_<method>"`: Use the `"<method>"` method in `stats::optim`. For example, `"optim_Nelder-Mead"` uses the Nelder-Mead. See `stats::optim()` for documentation of the six available methods.
- `"nlminb"`: Uses `stats::nlminb()`, a finite-difference gradient based approach.
- `"hookeJeeves"`: Uses `dfoptim::hjkb()`, a derivative-free approach for continuous and discontinuous likelihoods.

- `Rdistance_hessEps`: A vector of parameter distances used during computation of numeric second derivatives. These distances control and determine variance estimates, and they may need revision when the maximum likelihood solution is near a parameter boundary. Should have length 1 or the number of parameters in the model. See function `secondDeriv()` for further details.
- `Rdistance_trace`: Integer scalar for the level of information printed to the console by the optimization routine during maximization of the likelihood. All optimizer routines interpret a value of 0 as 'do not print any information' or silent. Higher values produce more information. The information produced varies among optimization routines.
- `Rdistance_requireUnits`: A logical specifying whether measurement units are required on distances and areas. If TRUE, measurement units are required on off-transect and radial distances in the input data frame. Likewise, measurement units are required on truncation distances, scale location, transect lengths, and study area size. If FALSE, no units are required and input values are used as is. The FALSE options is provided for rare cases when `Rdistance` functions are called from other functions and the calling functions do not accommodate units. Assign units with statement like `units(detectionDf$dist) <- "m"` or `setUnits(w.hi, "km")` or `w.hi <- 150 %% "m"` or `w.hi <- 150 %m%`. Measurement units of the various physical quantities need not be equal because appropriate conversions occur internally. An error is thrown if differing units are not compatible. For example, "m" (meters) cannot be converted into "ha" (hectares), but "acres" can be converted into "ha". `Rdistance` recognizes units listed in `units::units::valid_udunits()`.
- `Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning`: The proportion of bootstrap iterations that can fail without a warning. If the proportion of non-convergent bootstrap iterations exceeds this parameter, a warning about the validity of CI's is issued in the abundance print method.

Examples

```
# increase number of iterations
options(Rdistance_maxIters=2000)

# change optimizer and decrease tolerance
op <- options(list(Rdistance_optimizer="optim_Nelder-Mead"
  , Rdistance_likeTol=1e-6))

# change back
options(op)
```

RdistDf

Construct *Rdistance* nested data frames

Description

Makes an `Rdistance` data frame from separate transect and detection data frames. `Rdistance` data frames are nested data frames with one row per transect. Detection information for each transect appears in a list-based column that itself contains a data frame. See **Rdistance Data Frames**.

`Rdistance` data frames can be constructed using calls to `dplyr::nest_by` and `dplyr::right_join`, with subsequent attribute assignment (see **Examples**). This routine is a convenient wrapper for those calls.

Usage

```
RdistDf(
  transectDf,
  detectionDf,
  by = NULL,
  pointSurvey = FALSE,
  observer = "single",
  .detectionCol = "detections",
  .effortCol = NULL
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| transectDf | A data frame with one row per transect and columns containing information about the entire transect. At a minimum, this data frame must contain the transect's ID so it can be merged with detectionDf, (see parameter <code>by</code>) and the amount of effort the transect represents (see parameter <code>.effortCol</code>). All detections are made on a transect, but not all transects require detections. That is, transectDf should contain rows, and hence ID's and lengths, of all surveyed transects, even those on which no targets were detected (so-called "zero transects"). Transect-level covariates, such as habitat type, elevation, or observer IDs, should appear as variables in this data frame. |
| detectionDf | <p>A data frame containing detection information associated with each transect. At a minimum, each row of this data frame must contain the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transect IDs: The ID of the transect on which a target group was detected so that the detection data frame can be merged with transectDf (see parameter <code>by</code>). Multiple detections on the same transect are possible and hence multiple rows in detectionDf can contain the same transect ID. • Detection Distances: The distance at which each detection was made. The distance column will eventually be specified on the left-hand side of formula in a call to <code>dfuncEstim</code>. As of Rdistance version 3.0.0, detection distances must have physical measurement units assigned. See Measurement Units. <p>Optional columns in detectionDf:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Group sizes: If sighted targets vary in size, or group sizes are not all 1, detectionDf must also contain a column specifying group sizes. Non-unity group sizes are specified using <code>+groupsize(columnName)</code> on the right-hand-side of formula in an eventual call to <code>dfuncEstim</code>. • Detection Level Covariates: Such as sex, color, habitat, etc. |
| by | A character vector of variables to use in the join. The right-hand side of this join identifies unique transects (unique rows) in both transectDf and the output (see warning in Details). If NULL, the join will be 'natural', using all common variables in transectDf and detectionDf. To join on specific variables, specify a character vector of the variables. For example, <code>by = c("a", "b")</code> joins transectDf\$a to detectionDf\$a and transectDf\$b to detectionDf\$b. If join variable names differ between transectDf and detectionDf, use a named |

	character vector like <code>by = c("a" = "b", "c" = "d")</code> which joins <code>transectDf\$a</code> to <code>detectionDf\$b</code> and <code>transectDf\$c</code> to <code>detectionDf\$d</code> .
<code>pointSurvey</code>	If TRUE, observations were made from discrete points (i.e., during a point-transect survey) and distances are radial from observation point to target. If FALSE, observations were made along a continuous transect (i.e., during a line-transect survey) and distances are from target to nearest point on the transect (i.e., perpendicular to transect).
<code>observer</code>	Type of observer system. Legal values are "single" for single observer systems, "1given2" for a double observer system wherein observations made by observer 1 are tested against observations made by observer 2, "2given1" for a double observer system wherein observations made by observer 2 are tested against observations made by observer 1, and "both" for a double observer system wherein observations made by both observers are tested against the other and combined.
<code>.detectionCol</code>	Name of the list column that will contain detection data frames. Default name is "detections". Detection distances (LHS of <code>dfuncEstim</code> formula) and group sizes are normally columns in the nested detection data frames embedded in <code>.detectionCol</code> .
<code>.effortCol</code>	For continuous line transects, this specifies the name of a column in <code>transectDf</code> containing transect lengths, which must have measurement units. For point transects, this specifies the name of a column containing the number of points on each transect. The effort column for point transects <i>cannot</i> contain measurement units. Default is "length" for line-transects, "numPoints" for point-transects. If those names are not found, the first column in the merged data frame whose name contains 'point' (for point transects) or 'length' (for line transects) is used and a message is printed. Matching is case insensitive, so for example, 'nPoints' and 'N_point' and 'numberOfPoints' will all be matched. If two or more column names match the effort column search terms, a warning is issued. See Transect Lengths for a description of point and line transects.

Details

For valid bootstrap estimates of confidence intervals (computed in `abundEstim()`), each row of the nested data frame must represent one transect (more generally, one sampling unit), and none should be duplicated. The combination of transect columns in `by` (i.e., the LHS of the merge, or "a" and "b" of `by = c("a" = "d", "b" = "c")` for example) should specify *unique* transects and unique rows of `transectDf`. **Warning:** If `by` does not specify unique rows of `transectDf`, `dplyr::left_join`, which is called internally, will perform a many-to-many merge without warning, and this normally duplicates both transects and detections.

Value

A nested tibble (a generalization of base data frames) with one row per transect, and detection information in a list column. Technically, the return is a grouped tibble from the tibble package with one row per group, and a list column containing detection information. Survey type, observer system, and name of the effort column are recorded as attributes (`transType`, `obsType`, and `effortColumn`, respectfully). The return prints nicely using methods in package tibble. If

returned objects print strangely, attach library tibble. A summary method tailored to distance sampling is available (i.e., `summary(return)`).

Rdistance Data Frames

RdistDf data frames contain the following information:

- **Transect Information:** Each row of the data frame contains transect id and effort. Effort is transect length for line-transects, and number of points for point-transects. Optionally, transect-level covariates (such as habitat or observer id) appear on each row.
- **Detection Information:** Observation distances (either perpendicular off-transect or radial off-point) appear in a data frame stored in a list column. If detected groups occasionally included more than one target, a group size column must be present in the list-column data frame. Optionally, detection-level covariates (such as sex or size) can appear in the data frame of the list column.
- **Distance Type:** The type of observation distances, either perpendicular off-transect (for line-transects studies) or radial off-point (for point-transect studies) must appear as an attribute of RdistDf's.
- **Observer Type:** The type of observation system used, either single observer or one of three types of multiple observer systems, must appear as an attribute of RdistDf's.

Transect Lengths

Line-transects are continuous paths with targets detectable at any point. Point transects consist of one or more discrete points along a path from which observers search for targets. The length of a line-transect is its physical length (e.g., km or miles). The 'length' of a point transect is the number of points along the transect. Single points are considered transects of length one. The length of line-transects must have a physical measurement unit (e.g., 'm' or 'ft'). The length of point-transects must be a unit-less integers (i.e., number of points).

Measurement Units

As of Rdistance version 3.0.0, measurement units are required on all physical distances. Requiring units ensures that internal calculations and results (e.g., ESW and abundance) are correct and that output units are clear. Physical distances are required on off-transect distances, radial distances, truncation distances (`w.lo`, unless it is zero; and `w.hi`, unless it is NULL), scale locations (`x.scl`, unless it is zero), line-transect lengths, and study area size. All units are 1-dimensional except those on study area, which are 2-dimensional.

Physical measurement units can vary. For example, off-transect distances can be meters ("m"), `w.hi` can be inches ("in"), and `w.lo` can be kilometers ("km"). Internally, all distances are converted to the units specified by `outputUnits` (or the units of input distances if `outputUnits` is NULL), and all output is reported in units of `outputUnits`. Valid conversions must exist between units or an error is thrown (e.g., meters cannot convert into hectares).

Measurement units can be assigned using one of Rdistance's unit helper routines (see `help(unitHelpers)`), Rdistance's `setUnits()` function, or `units::set_units()`. See `units::valid_udunits()` for a list of valid symbolic units.

If measurements are truly unit-less, or measurement units are unknown, set `options(Rdist_requireUnits = FALSE)`. This suppresses all unit checks and conversions. Users are on their own here and must

make sure all inputs are scaled correctly so that internal computations are correct and output units are known.

See Also

[is.RdistDf\(\)](#): check validity of RdistDf data frames; [dfuncEstim\(\)](#): estimate distance function.

Examples

```
data(sparrowSiteData)
data(sparrowDetectionData)

sparrowDf <- RdistDf( sparrowSiteData, sparrowDetectionData )
is.RdistDf(sparrowDf, verbose = T)
summary(sparrowDf)
summary(sparrowDf
        , formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
        , w.hi = 100 %m%.)

# Equivalent to above:
sparrowDf <- sparrowDetectionData |>
  dplyr::nest_by( siteID
                , .key = "detections" ) |>
  dplyr::right_join(sparrowSiteData, by = "siteID")
attr(sparrowDf, "detectionColumn") <- "detections"
attr(sparrowDf, "effortColumn") <- "length"
attr(sparrowDf, "obsType") <- "single"
attr(sparrowDf, "transType") <- "line"
is.RdistDf(sparrowDf, verbose = T)
summary(sparrowDf, formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize))

# Condensed view: 1 row per transect (make sure tibble is attached)
sparrowDf

# Expansion methods:
# (1) use Rdistance::unnest (includes zero transects)
df1 <- unnest(sparrowDf)
any( df1$siteID == "B2" ) # TRUE

# Use tidyr::unnest(); but, no zero transects
df2 <- tidyr::unnest(sparrowDf, cols = "detections")
any( df2$siteID == "B2" ) # FALSE

# Use dplyr::reframe for specific transects (e.g., for transect "B3")
sparrowDf |>
  dplyr::filter(siteID == "B3") |>
  dplyr::reframe(detections)

# Count detections per transect (can't use dplyr::if_else)
df3 <- sparrowDf |>
  dplyr::reframe(nDetections = ifelse(is.null(detections), 0, nrow(detections)))
sum(df3$nDetections) # Number of detections
sum(df3$nDetections == 0) # Number of zero transects
```

```
# Point transects
data(thrasherDetectionData)
data(thrasherSiteData)
thrasherDf <- RdistDf( thrasherSiteData
                      , thrasherDetectionData
                      , pointSurvey = TRUE
                      , by = "siteID"
                      , .detectionCol = "detections")
summary(thrasherDf, formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize))
```

secondDeriv	<i>Numeric second derivatives</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Computes numeric second derivatives (hessian) of an arbitrary multidimensional function at a particular location.

Usage

```
secondDeriv(x, FUN, eps = 1e-08, ...)
```

Arguments

x	The location (a vector) where the second derivatives of FUN are desired.
FUN	An R function for which the second derivatives are sought. This must be a function of the form FUN <- function(x, ...){...} where x is a vector of variable parameters to FUN at which to evaluate the 2nd derivative, and ... are additional parameters needed to evaluate the function. FUN must return a single value (scalar), the height of the surface above x, i.e., FUN evaluated at x.
eps	A vector of small relative distances to add to x when evaluating derivatives. This determines the ' dx ' of the numerical derivatives. That is, the function is evaluated at x, x+dx, and x+2*dx, where $dx = x * \text{eps}^{0.25}$, in order to compute the second derivative. eps defaults to 1e-8 for all dimensions which equates to setting dx to one percent of each x (i.e., by default the function is evaluate at x, 1.01*x and 1.02*x to compute the second derivative). One might want to change eps if the scale of dimensions in x varies wildly (e.g., kilometers and millimeters), or if changes between FUN(x) and FUN(x*1.01) are below machine precision. If length of eps is less than length of x, eps is replicated to the length of x.
...	Any arguments passed to FUN.

Details

This function uses the "5-point" numeric second derivative method advocated in numerous numerical recipe texts. During computation of the 2nd derivative, FUN must be capable of being evaluated at numerous locations within a hyper-ellipsoid with cardinal radii $2 \cdot x(\text{eps})^{0.25} = 0.02x$ at the default value of eps.

A handy way to use this function is to call an optimization routine like `nlminb` with FUN, then call this function with the optimized values (solution) and FUN. This will yield the hessian at the solution and this can produce a better estimate of the variance-covariance matrix than using the hessian returned by some optimization routines. Some optimization routines return the hessian evaluated at the next-to-last step of optimization.

An estimate of the variance-covariance matrix, which is used in `Rdistance`, is `solve(hessian)` where hessian is `secondDeriv(<parameter estimates>, <likelihood>)`.

Examples

```
func <- function(x){-x*x} # second derivative should be -2
secondDeriv(0,func)
secondDeriv(3,func)

func <- function(x){3 + 5*x^2 + 2*x^3} # second derivative should be 10+12x
secondDeriv(0,func)
secondDeriv(2,func)

func <- function(x){x[1]^2 + 5*x[2]^2} # should be rbind(c(2,0),c(0,10))
secondDeriv(c(1,1),func)
```

setOptimizer	<i>Set optimizing routine</i>
--------------	-------------------------------

Description

Checks that the maximum likelihood optimizing routine is appropriate for the requested likelihood function. That is, checks that gradient based maximization routines are only applied to smooth likelihoods, and that gradient-free methods are used for non-smooth likelihoods.

Usage

```
setOptimizer(ml)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model
----	--

frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

If Rdistance options are changed, a list of the options and their original values. The return can be used outside this routine to set options back to their state when this routine was entered. If no options changed, the return is NULL.

simple.expansion	<i>Simple polynomial expansion factors</i>
------------------	--

Description

Computes simple polynomial expansion terms for use in distance analysis. The Simple (and other expansions) allow "wiggle" in estimated distance functions.

Usage

```
simple.expansion(x, expansions)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion series. For distance analysis, x should be the proportion of the maximum sighting distance at which a group was sighted, i.e., $x = d/w$, where d is sighting distance and w is maximum sighting distance.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of expansion terms to compute. Must be one of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5.

Details

The polynomials computed here are:

- **First term:**

$$h_1(x) = x^4,$$

- **Second term:**

$$h_2(x) = x^6,$$

- **Third term:**

$$h_3(x) = x^8,$$

- **Fourth term:**

$$h_4(x) = x^{10},$$

The maximum number of expansion terms computed is 4.

Value

A 3D array of size `nrow(x)` X `ncol(x)` X expansions. The 'pages' (3rd dimension) of this array are the cosine expansions of `x`. i.e., page 1 is the first expansion term of `x`, page 2 is the second expansion term of `x`, etc.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `cosine.expansion()`, `sine.expansion()`, `hermite.expansion()`.

Examples

```
x <- matrix(seq(0, 1, length = 200), ncol = 1)
simp.expn <- simple.expansion(x, 4)
plot(range(x), range(simp.expn), type="n")
matlines(x, simp.expn[,1,1:4], col=rainbow(4), lty = 1)
```

simsponCoefs

Simpson numerical integration coefficients

Description

Return a vector of Simpson's Composite numerical integration coefficients.

Usage

```
simsponCoefs(n)
```

Arguments

<code>n</code>	Number of coefficients, which is the number of points at which the function of interest is evaluated. The number of intervals is $(n-1)/2$. This number must be odd.
----------------	---

Details

Let `x` be an vector of equally spaced points in the domain of a function `f` (equally spaced is critical). Let `y = f(x)`. The numeric integral of `f` from `min(x)` to `max(x)` is `sum(simsponCoefs(length(y)) * y) * (x[2] - x[1]) / 3`.

Value

A vector of Simpson Composite rule coefficients suitable for numeric integration. The return is a vector of integers alternating between 4 and 2, with 1's on each end.

Examples

```
x <- seq(0, 9, length=13)
y <- x^2

scoefs <- simpsonCoefs(length(x))

# exact integral is 9^3/3 = 243
sum( scoefs*y ) * (x[2] - x[1]) / 3
```

sine.expansion	<i>Sine expansion terms</i>
----------------	-----------------------------

Description

Computes the sine expansion terms that modify the shape of distance likelihood functions.

Usage

```
sine.expansion(x, expansions)
```

Arguments

x	A numeric matrix of distances at which to evaluate the expansion series. For distance analysis, x should be the proportion of the maximum sighting distance at which a group was sighted, i.e., $x = d/w$, where d is sighting distance and w is maximum sighting distance.
expansions	A scalar specifying the number of expansion terms to compute. Must be one of the integers 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5.

Details

The sine expansion used here is:

- **First term:**

$$h_1(x) = \sin(2\pi x)/2,$$

- **Second term:**

$$h_2(x) = \sin(3\pi x)/2,$$

- **Third term:**

$$h_3(x) = \sin(4\pi x)/2,$$

- **Fourth term:**

$$h_4(x) = \sin(5\pi x)/2,$$

- **Fifth term:**

$$h_5(x) = \sin(6\pi x)/2,$$

The maximum number of expansion terms is 5.

The sine expansion frequency in `Rdistance` is π . Each term is one π more than the previous. The cosine expansion frequency in `Rdistance` is 2π . Consequently, the sine and cosine expansions fit different models.

Value

A 3D array of size `nrow(x) X ncol(x) X expansions`. The 'pages' (3rd dimension) of this array are the cosine expansions of `x`. i.e., page 1 is the first expansion term of `x`, page 2 is the second expansion term of `x`, etc.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `cosine.expansion()`

Examples

```
x <- matrix(seq(0, 1, length = 200), ncol = 1)
sin.expn <- sine.expansion(x, 5)
plot(range(x), range(sin.expn), type="n")
matlines(x, sin.expn[,1,1:5], col=rainbow(5), lty = 1)
```

`sparrowDetectionData` *Brewer's Sparrow detection data*

Description

Detection data from line transect surveys for Brewer's sparrow on 72 transects located on a 4105 km² study area in central Wyoming. Data were collected by Dr. Jason Carlisle of the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2012. Each transect was 500 meters long.

Format

A `data.frame` containing 356 rows and 5 columns. Each row represents a detected group of sparrows. Column descriptions:

1. `siteID`: Factor (72 levels), the site or transect where the detection was made.
2. `groupsize`: Number, the number of individuals within the detected group.
3. `sightdist`: Number, distance (m) from the observer to the detected group.
4. `sightangle`: Number, the angle (degrees) from the transect line to the detected group.
5. `dist`: Number, the perpendicular, off-transect distance (m) from the transect to the detected group. This is the distance used in analysis. Calculated using `perpDists()`.

Source

The Brewer's sparrow data are a subset of the data collected by Jason Carlisle and various field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.

Carlisle, J. D., and A. D. Chalfoun. 2020. The abundance of Greater Sage-Grouse as a proxy for the abundance of sagebrush-associated songbirds in Wyoming, USA. *Avian Conservation and Ecology* 15(2):16. doi:10.5751/ACE01702150216

See Also

[sparrowSiteData\(\)](#)

sparrowDf

Brewer's Sparrow detection data frame in Rdistance >4.0.0 format.

Description

Detection data from line transect surveys for Brewer's sparrow on 72 transects located on a 4105 km² study area in central Wyoming collected by Dr. Jason Carlisle as part of his graduate work in the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2012. Each transect was 500 meters long.

Format

A rowwise tibble containing 72 rows and 9 columns, one of which is nested data frame of detections. Each row represents one transect. The embedded data frame in column detections contains the detections made on the transect represented on that row.

Column descriptions:

1. siteID: Factor (72 levels), the transect identifier for that row of the data frame.
2. length: The length, in meters [m], of each transect.
3. observer: Identity of the observer who surveyed the transect.
4. bare: The mean bare ground cover (%) within 100 [m] of the transect.
5. herb: The mean herbaceous cover (%) within 100 [m] of the transect.
6. shrub: The mean shrub cover (%) within 100 [m] of the transect.
7. height: The mean shrub height [cm] within 100 [m] of the transect.
8. shrubclass: Shrub class factor. Either "Low" when shrub cover is < 10%, or "High" if cover >= 10%.

The embedded data frame in column detections contains the following variables:

1. groupsize: The number of individuals in the detected group.
2. sightdist: Distance [m] from observer to the detected group.
3. sightangle: Angle [degrees] from the transect line to the detected group. Not bearing. Range 0 [degrees] to 90 [degrees].
4. dist: Perpendicular, off-transect distance [m], from the transect to the detected group. This is the distance used in analysis. Calculated using `perpDists()`.

Source

The Brewer's sparrow data are a subset of data collected by Jason Carlisle and various field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

- Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.
- Carlisle, J. D., and A. D. Chalfoun. 2020. The abundance of Greater Sage-Grouse as a proxy for the abundance of sagebrush-associated songbirds in Wyoming, USA. *Avian Conservation and Ecology* 15(2):16. doi:10.5751/ACE01702150216

See Also

`sparrowSiteData()`, `sparrowDetectionData()`, `RdistDf()`

Examples

```
## Not run:
# The following code generated 'sparrowDf'
data(sparrowDetectionData)
data(sparrowSiteData)
sparrowDf <- RdistDf(transectDf = sparrowSiteData
                     , detectionDf = sparrowDetectionData
                     , by = "siteID"
                     , pointSurvey = FALSE
                     , .effortCol = "length"
                     )

## End(Not run)

data(sparrowDf)
tidyr::unnest(sparrowDf, detections) # only non-zero transects
Rdistance::unnest(sparrowDf) # with zero transects at the bottom
summary(sparrowDf,
        formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
)
```

sparrowDfuncObserver *Brewer's Sparrow detection function*

Description

Pre-estimated Brewer's sparrow detection function that includes an 'observer' effect. Included to speed up example execution times. See 'Examples'.

Format

An estimated distance function object with class 'dfunc'. See 'Value' section of [dfuncEstim\(\)](#) for description of components.

See Also

[sparrowSiteData\(\)](#) and [sparrowDetectionData\(\)](#) for description of the data

Examples

```
## Not run:
# the following code generated 'sparrowDfuncObserver'
data(sparrowDf)
sparrowDfuncObserver <- sparrowDf |>
  dfuncEstim(formula = dist ~ observer
             , likelihood = "hazrate")

## End(Not run)
```

sparrowSiteData *Brewer's Sparrow site data*

Description

Site data from line transect surveys for Brewer's sparrow on 72 transects located on a 4105 km² study area in central Wyoming. Data were collected by Dr. Jason Carlisle of the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2012. Each transect was 500 meters long.

Format

A data.frame containing 72 rows and 8 columns. Each row represents a site (transect) surveyed. Column descriptions:

1. siteID: Factor (72 levels), the site or transect surveyed.
2. length: Number, the length in meters ([m]) of each transect.

3. observer: Factor (five levels), identity of the observer who surveyed the transect.
4. bare: Number, the mean bare ground cover (%) within 100 [m] of each transect.
5. herb: Number, the mean herbaceous cover (%) within 100 [m] of each transect.
6. shrub: Number, the mean shrub cover (%) within 100 m of each transect.
7. height: Number, the mean shrub height [cm] within 100 m of each transect.
8. shrubclass: Factor (two levels), shrub class is "Low" when shrub cover is < 10%, "High" otherwise.

Source

The Brewer's sparrow data are a subset of the data collected by Jason Carlisle and various field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: Implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.

Carlisle, J. D., and A. D. Chalfoun. 2020. The abundance of Greater Sage-Grouse as a proxy for the abundance of sagebrush-associated songbirds in Wyoming, USA. *Avian Conservation and Ecology* 15(2):16. doi:10.5751/ACE01702150216

See Also

[sparrowDetectionData\(\)](#)

startLimits

Distance function starting values and limits

Description

Returns starting values and limits (boundaries) for the parameters of distance functions. This function is called by other routines in Rdistance, and is not intended to be called by the user. Replace this function in the global environment to change boundaries and starting values.

Usage

```
startLimits(ml)
```

Arguments

ml Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to `parseModel()`. Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to `dfuncEstim()`. 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A list containing the following components

start	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
lowlimit	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
uplimit	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
names	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(sparrowDf)

# Half-normal start limits
modList <- parseModel(
  data = sparrowDf
  , formula = dist ~ 1
  , likelihood = "halfnorm"
)
startLimits(modList)

# Half-normal with expansions
modList <- parseModel(
  data = sparrowDf
  , formula = dist ~ 1
  , likelihood = "halfnorm"
  , expansions = 3
)
startLimits(modList)

# Hazard rate start limits
modList$likelihood <- "hazrate"
startLimits(modList)
```

```
# Neg exp start limits
modList$likelihood <- "negexp"
startLimits(modList)
```

summary.abund	<i>Summarize abundance estimates</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------

Description

Summarize an object of class `c("abund", "dfunc")` that is output by `abundEstim`.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'abund'
summary(object, criterion = "AICc", ...)
```

Arguments

<code>object</code>	An <code>Rdistance</code> model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
<code>criterion</code>	A string specifying the model fit criterion to print. Must be one of "AICc" (the default), "AIC", or "BIC". See <code>AIC.dfunc()</code> for formulas.
<code>...</code>	Included for compatibility to other print methods. Ignored here.

Details

If the proportion of bootstrap iterations that failed is greater than `getOption("Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning")`, a warning about the validity of CI's is issued and a diagnostic message printed. Increasing this option to a number greater than 1 will kill the warning (e.g., `options(Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning = 1.3)`), but ignoring a large number of non-convergent bootstrap iterations may be a bad idea (i.e., validity of the CI is questionable). The default value for `Rdistance_maxBSFailPropForWarning` is 0.2.

Value

0 is invisibly returned.

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, `summary.dfunc()`, `print.dfunc()`, `print.abund()`

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowDf)

# Fit half-normal detection function
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(formula=dist ~ 1 + offset(groupsize))

# Estimate abundance given the detection function
fit <- abundEstim(dfunc
  , area = setUnits(4105, "km^2")
  , ci=NULL)
summary(fit) # No confidence intervals

## Not run:
# With bootstrap confidence intervals
# Requires ~3 min to complete
fit <- abundEstim(dfunc
  , area = setUnits(4105, "km^2")
  , ci=0.95)

summary(fit)

## End(Not run)
```

summary.dfunc

Summarize a distance function object

Description

A summary method for distance functions. Distance functions are produced by `dfuncEstim` (class `dfunc`).

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'dfunc'
summary(object, criterion = "AICc", ...)
```

Arguments

<code>object</code>	An Rdistance model frame or fitted distance function, normally produced by a call to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
<code>criterion</code>	A string specifying the model fit criterion to print. Must be one of "AICc" (the default), "AIC", or "BIC". See AIC.dfunc() for formulas.
<code>...</code>	Included for compatibility with other print methods. Ignored here.

Details

This function prints the following quantities:

- ‘Call’ : The original function call.
- ‘Coefficients’ : A matrix of estimated coefficients, their standard errors, and Wald Z tests.
- ‘Strip’ : The left (w.lo) and right (w.hi) truncation values.
- ‘Effective strip width or detection radius’ : ESW or EDR as computed by effectiveDistance.
- ‘Probability of Detection’ : Probability of detecting a single target in the strip.
- ‘Scaling’ : The horizontal and vertical coordinates used to scale the distance function. Usually, the horizontal coordinate is 0 and the vertical coordinate is 1 (i.e., $g(0) = 1$).
- ‘Log likelihood’ : Value of the maximized log likelihood.
- ‘Criterion’ : Value of the specified fit criterion (AIC, AICc, or BIC).

The number of digits used in the printout is controlled by `options()$digits`.

Value

The input distance function object (object), invisibly, with the following additional components:

- convMessage: The convergence message. If the distance function is smoothed, the convergence message is NULL.
- effDistance: The ESW or EDR.
- pDetect: Probability of detection in the strip.
- AIC: AICc, AIC, or BIC of the fit, whichever was requested.
- coefficients: If the distance function has coefficients, this is the coefficient matrix with standard errors, Wald Z values, and p values. If the distance function is smoothed, it has no coefficients and this component is NULL.

See Also

[dfuncEstim\(\)](#), [plot.dfunc\(\)](#), [print.abund\(\)](#), [print.abund\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# Load example sparrow data (line transect survey type)
data(sparrowDf)

# Fit half-normal detection function
dfunc <- sparrowDf |> dfuncEstim(formula=dist~1)

# Print results
summary(dfunc)
summary(dfunc, criterion="BIC")
```

summary.rowwise_df	<i>Summary method for Rdistance data frames</i>
--------------------	---

Description

Summary method for distance sampling data frames. Rdistance data frames are rowwise tibbles. This routine is a replacement summary method for rowwise_df's that provides useful distance sampling descriptive statistics.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'rowwise_df'
summary(object, formula = NULL, w.lo = 0, w.hi = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

object	An RdistDf data frame.
formula	A standard formula object. For example, <code>dist ~ 1, dist ~ covar1 + covar2</code> . The left-hand side (before <code>~</code>) is the name of the vector containing off-transect or radial detection distances. The right-hand side contains the names of covariate vectors to fit in the detection function, and potentially group sizes. Group sizes are specified by including <code>+ groupsize(<variable>)</code> in the RHS (see 'Group Sizes' section). Covariates can be either detection level or transect level and can appear in data or exist in the global working environment. Regular R scoping rules apply.
w.lo	Lower or left-truncation limit of the distances in distance data. This is the minimum possible off-transect distance. Default is 0. If w.lo is greater than 0, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
w.hi	Upper or right-truncation limit of the distances in dist. This is the maximum off-transect distance that could be observed. If unspecified (i.e., <code>NULL</code>), right-truncation is set to the maximum of the observed distances. If w.hi is specified, it must have measurement units. See <code>help(unitHelpers)</code> for assistance assigning units.
...	Other arguments for summary methods.

Value

If object is an RdistDf, a data frame containing summary statistics relevant to distance sampling is returned invisibly. If formula is not specified, the number of distance observations and target detections is not returned because the distances, group sizes, and covariates are not known. If object is not an Rdistance data frame, return is the result of the next summary method.

Examples

```
data(thrasherDf)
summary(thrasherDf)
summary(thrasherDf
        , formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
        , w.hi = setUnits(100,"m")
        )
```

thrasherDetectionData *Sage Thrasher detection data*

Description

Point transect data collected in central Wyoming from 120 points surveyed for Sage Thrashers by the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2013.

Format

A data.frame containing 193 rows and 3 columns. Each row represents a detected group of thrashers. Column descriptions:

1. siteID: Factor (120 levels), the site or point where the detection was made.
2. groupsize: Number, the number of individuals within the detected group.
3. dist: Number, the radial distance (m) from the transect to the detected group. This is the distance used in analysis.

Source

The Sage Thrasher data are a subset of the data collected by Jason Carlisle and various field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

- Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.
- Carlisle, J. D., A. D. Chalfoun, K. T. Smith, and J. L. Beck. 2018. Nontarget effects on songbirds from habitat manipulation for Greater Sage-Grouse: Implications for the umbrella species concept. *The Condor: Ornithological Applications* 120:439–455. doi:[10.1650/CONDOR17200.1](https://doi.org/10.1650/CONDOR17200.1)

See Also

[thrasherSiteData\(\)](#)

thrasherDf

*Sage Thrasher detection data frame in Rdistance >4.0.0 format***Description**

Point transect data collected in central Wyoming on 120 points surveyed for Sage Thrashers by the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2013.

Format

A rowwise tibble containing 120 rows and 8 columns, one of which (i.e., 'detections') contains nested data frames of detections. Each row represents one transect of one point.

A data.frame containing 120 rows and 6 columns. Each row represents a surveyed site. Each surveyed site is considered one transect of one point. Column descriptions:

1. siteID: Factor (120 levels), the site or point surveyed.
2. detections: An embedded (nested) data frame containing detections made at that point. Columns in the embedded data frame contain:
 - (a) groupsize: The number of individuals in the detected group.
 - (b) dist: The radial distance (m) from the transect to the detected group.
3. observer: Factor (six levels), identity of the observer who surveyed the point.
4. bare: Number, the mean bare ground cover (%) within 100 m of each point.
5. herb: Number, the mean herbaceous cover (%) within 100 m of each point.
6. shrub: Number, the mean shrub cover (%) within 100 m of each point.
7. height: Number, the mean shrub height [cm] within 100 m of each point.
8. npoints: The number of point counts on the transect.

Source

The sage thrasher data are a subset of data collected by Jason Carlisle and various field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

- Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.
- Carlisle, J. D., A. D. Chalfoun, K. T. Smith, and J. L. Beck. 2018. Nontarget effects on songbirds from habitat manipulation for Greater Sage-Grouse: Implications for the umbrella species concept. *The Condor: Ornithological Applications* 120:439–455. doi:10.1650/CONDOR17200.1

See Also

[thrasherSiteData\(\)](#), [thrasherDetectionData\(\)](#), [RdistDf\(\)](#)

Examples

```
data(thrasherDf)

is.RdistDf(thrasherDf)

summary(thrasherDf,
  formula = dist ~ groupsize(groupsize)
)
```

thrasherSiteData	<i>Sage Thrasher site data.</i>
------------------	---------------------------------

Description

Point transect data collected in central Wyoming from 120 points surveyed for Sage Thrashers by the Wyoming Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit in 2013.

Format

A data.frame containing 120 rows and 6 columns. Each row represents a surveyed site (point). Column descriptions:

1. siteID: Factor (120 levels), the site or point surveyed.
2. observer: Factor (six levels), identity of the observer who surveyed the point.
3. bare: Number, the mean bare ground cover (%) within 100 m of each point.
4. herb: Number, the mean herbaceous cover (%) within 100 [m] of each point.
5. shrub: Number, the mean shrub cover (%) within 100 [m] of each point.
6. height: Number, the mean shrub height [cm] within 100 [m] of each point.

Source

The Sage Thrasher data are a subset of data collected by Jason Carlisle and field technicians for his Ph.D. from the Department of Ecology, University of Wyoming, in 2017. This portion of Jason's work was funded by the Wyoming Game and Fish Department through agreements with the University of Wyoming's Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Research Unit (2012).

References

- Carlisle, J.D. 2017. The effect of sage-grouse conservation on wildlife species of concern: implications for the umbrella species concept. Dissertation. University of Wyoming, Laramie, Wyoming, USA.
- Carlisle, J. D., A. D. Chalfoun, K. T. Smith, and J. L. Beck. 2018. Nontarget effects on songbirds from habitat manipulation for Greater Sage-Grouse: Implications for the umbrella species concept. *The Condor: Ornithological Applications* 120:439–455. doi:[10.1650/CONDOR17200.1](https://doi.org/10.1650/CONDOR17200.1)

See Also

[thrasherDetectionData\(\)](#)

transectType	<i>Type of transects</i>
--------------	--------------------------

Description

Return the type of transects represented in either a fitted distance function or Rdistance data frame.

Usage

```
transectType(x)
```

Arguments

x Either an estimated distance function, output by dfuncEstim, or an Rdistance nested data frame, output by RdistDf.

Details

This function is a simple helper function. If x is an estimated distance object, it polls the transType attribute of x's Rdistance nested data frame. If x is an Rdistance nested data frame, it polls the transType attribute.

Value

A scalar. Either 'line' if x contains continuous line-transect detections, or 'point' if x contains point-transects detections. If transect type has not been assigned, return is NULL.

triangle.like	<i>Mixture of triangle and uniform likelihood</i>
---------------	---

Description

Compute likelihood function for a mixture of a triangle and uniform distributions.

Usage

```
triangle.like(a, dist, covars, w.hi = NULL)
```

Arguments

<code>a</code>	A vector or matrix of covariate and expansion term coefficients. If matrix, dimension is $k \times p$, where $k = \text{nrow}(a)$ is the number of coefficient vectors to evaluate (cases) and $p = \text{ncol}(a)$ is the number of covariate and expansion coefficients in the likelihood (i.e., rows are cases and columns are covariates). If <code>a</code> is a dimensionless vector, it is interpreted as a single row with $k = 1$. Covariate coefficients in <code>a</code> are the first q values ($q \leq p$), and must be on a log scale.
<code>dist</code>	A numeric vector of length n or a single-column matrix (dimension $n \times 1$) containing detection distances at which to evaluate the likelihood.
<code>covars</code>	A numeric vector of length q or a matrix of dimension $n \times q$ containing covariate values associated with distances in argument <code>dist</code> .
<code>w.hi</code>	A numeric scalar containing maximum distance. The right-hand cutoff or upper limit. Ignored by some likelihoods (such as <code>halfnorm</code> , <code>negexp</code> , and <code>hazrate</code>), but is a fixed parameter in other likelihoods (such as <code>oneStep</code> and <code>uniform</code>).

Details

Rdistance's triangle likelihood is a mixture of a triangle and uniform distribution. The 'triangle' density function is

$$f(d|\theta, p) = (1 - \frac{1-p}{\theta}d)I(0 \leq d \leq \theta) + pI(\theta \leq d \leq w),$$

where $I(x)$ is the indicator function for event x , and w is the nominal strip width (i.e., `w.hi - w.lo` in Rdistance). The unknown parameters to be estimated are θ and p (w is fixed - given by the user).

Covariates influence values of θ via a log link function, i.e., $\theta = e^{x'b}$, where x is the vector of covariate values associated with distance d , and b is the vector of estimated coefficients.

Value

A list containing the following two components:

- **L.unscaled:** A matrix of size $n \times k$ ($n = \text{length dist}$; $k = \text{number of cases} = \text{nrow}(a)$) containing likelihood values evaluated at distances in `dist`. Each row is associated with a single distance, and each column is associated with a single case (row of `a`). Values in this matrix are the distance function $g(d)$ which generally have $g(0) = 1$. These values are "unscaled" likelihood values; they must be scaled (divided by) with the area under $g(x)$ between `w.lo` and `w.hi` to form proper likelihood values.
- **params:** A $n \times b \times k$ array of the likelihood's (canonical) parameters in link space (i.e., on log scale; $b = \text{number of canonical parameters in the likelihood}$; $k = \text{number of cases}$). Rows correspond to distances in `dist`. Columns correspond to parameters (columns of `a`), and pages correspond to cases (rows of `a`).

See Also

`dfuncEstim()`, `abundEstim()`, other `<likelihood>.like` functions

Examples

```

w <- 250
Theta <- 160
p <- 0.4
d <- seq(0,w,length = w+1)
y <- (1 - ((1-p)/Theta)*d)*(d <= Theta) + p*(d > Theta)
plot(d, y, type="l", ylim = c(0,1), xlab = "Distance", ylab = "Probability")
points(Theta, p, pch=16, col = "red")
lines(c(-10,Theta), c(p,p), lty = 2, col = "grey")
axis(2, at=p, label = "p", line = 1, srt = 0, tick = FALSE)
lines(c(Theta,Theta), c(-1,p), lty = 2, col = "grey")
axis(1, at=Theta, label = "Theta", line = 2, tick = FALSE)

Theta <- 25
p <- 0.2
y <- (1 - ((1-p)/Theta)*d)*(d <= Theta) + p*(d > Theta)
lines(d, y)
points(Theta, p, pch=16, col = "red")
lines(c(-10,Theta), c(p,p), lty = 2, col = "grey")
axis(2, at=p, label = "p", line = 1, srt = 0, tick = FALSE)
lines(c(Theta,Theta), c(-1,p), lty = 2, col = "grey")
axis(1, at=Theta, label = "Theta", line = 2, tick = FALSE)

# same as above
y <- triangle.like(a = c(log(Theta), p)
                  , dist = d
                  , covars = matrix(1, length(d))
                  , w.hi = 250)
lines(d, y$L.unscaled, col = "green")

```

triangle.start.limits *triangle likelihood start and limit values*

Description

Compute starting values and limits for the triangle distance function.

Usage

```
triangle.start.limits(ml)
```

Arguments

ml	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to parseModel() . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to dfuncEstim() . 'Fitted objects' are 'model
----	--

frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A list containing the following components

start	Vector of starting values for parameters of the likelihood and expansion terms.
lowlimit	Vector of lower limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
uplimit	Vector of upper limits for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.
names	Vector of names for the likelihood parameters and expansion terms.

The length of each vector in the return is: (Num expansions) + 1 + 1*(like %in% c("hazrate")) + (Num Covars).

See Also

[triangle.like\(\)](#)

Examples

```
# make 'model list' object
# Boundary is 10, p is 100 / 120 = 0.833
library(Rdistance)
whi <- 50
x <- c( runif(100, min=0, max=10), runif(20, min=10, max=whi))
x <- setUnits(x, "m")
detectDf <- data.frame(transect = 1, dist = x)
siteDf <- data.frame(transect = 1, length = setUnits(10,"m"))
distDf <- RdistDf(siteDf, detectDf)
ml <- parseModel(distDf
  , formula = dist ~ 1
  , w.lo = 0
  , w.hi = setUnits(whi, "m")
)

sl <- oneStep.start.limits(ml)
hist(x, n = 20)
abline(v = exp(sl$start["(Intercept)"]))
```

unnest

*Unnest an RdistDf data frame***Description**

Unnest an RdistDf data frame by expanding the embedded 'detections' column. This unnest includes the so-called zero transects (transects without detections).

Usage

```
unnest(data, ...)
```

Arguments

data	An RdistDf data frame. RdistDf data frames contain one line per transect and a list-based column. The list-based column contains a data frame with detection information. The detection information data frame on each row contains (at least) distances and group sizes of all targets detected on the transect. Function <code>RdistDf()</code> creates RdistDf data frames from separate transect and detection data frames. <code>is.RdistDf()</code> checks whether data frames are RdistDf's.
...	Additional arguments passed to <code>tidyr::unnest</code> if data is not an RdistDf.

Value

An expanded data frame, without embedded data frames. Rows in the return represent with one detection or one transect. If multiple detections were made on one transect, the transect will appear on multiple rows. If no detections were made on a transect, it will appear on one row with NA detection distance.

Examples

```
data('sparrowDf')

# tidyr::unnest() does not include zero transects
detectionDf <- tidyr::unnest(sparrowDf, detections)
nrow(detectionDf)
any(detectionDf$siteID == "B2")

# Rdistance::unnest() includes zero transects
fullDf <- unnest(sparrowDf)
nrow(fullDf)
any(fullDf$siteID == "B2")
```

varcovarEstim	<i>Estimate variance-covariance</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------

Description

Estimate the variance-covariance matrix of parameters in the distance function. If the likelihood is differentiable, the variance-covariance matrix is estimated from the second derivative of the likelihood (i.e., the hessian). If the likelihood is not differentiable, the variance-covariance matrix is a matrix of 0's that are interpreted as "pending" (i.e., pending bootstrapping).

Usage

```
varcovarEstim(x, ml)
```

Arguments

<code>x</code>	An estimated detection function object, normally produced by calling <code>dfuncEstim()</code> .
<code>ml</code>	Either a Rdistance 'model frame' or an Rdistance 'fitted object'. Both are of class "dfunc". Rdistance 'model frames' are lists containing components necessary to estimate a distance function, but no estimates. Rdistance 'model frames' are typically produced by calls to <code>parseModel()</code> . Rdistance 'fitted objects' are typically produced by calls to <code>dfuncEstim()</code> . 'Fitted objects' are 'model frames' with additional components such as the parameters estimates, log likelihood value, convergence information, and the variance- covariance matrix of the parameters.

Value

A square symmetric matrix estimating the variance-covariance matrix of parameters in `x`. Dimension of return is $p \times p$, where $p = \text{length}(x\$par)$.

###	<i>Unit assignment helpers</i>
-----	--------------------------------

Description

Helper functions for assigning physical measurement units in Rdistance. All are convenience wrappers for `units::units::set_units()`.

Usage

```

x %% u

x %acre% .

x %cm% .

x %ft% .

x %ha% .

x %inches% .

x %km% .

x %km^2% .

x %m% .

x %m^2% .

x %mi% .

x %mi^2% .

x %yd% .

dropUnits(x)

setUnits(x, u)

```

Arguments

x	A numeric vector or matrix.
u	A string representing physical measurement units to assign to x, e.g., "m", "km", "m^2". Valid units are listed in columns "(symbolname)" of units::valid_udunits() .
.	Placeholder for the fixed unit assignment operators. Ignored. See Details.

Details

The fixed unit assignment operators are designed to behave like unary operators (i.e., 1 argument); but, R does not allow user defined unary operators. Technically, these fixed unit assignment operators are instances of R's user-defined infix operator, and as such they require two arguments. Their syntax must be `x %<units>% <something>`; but, the second argument is ignored and `'.'` is suggested. See Examples.

Value

For %%% and setUnits, argument x with units u attached.

For all the fixed unit assignment operators (i.e., %units%), argument x with the respective units assigned.

For dropUnits, argument x with no units. If input x has no units, x is returned unchanged.

Examples

```
2 %%% "m"
setUnits(2, "km")
x <- 2 %%% "km^2"
10 %%% units(x)
2 %%% "km^2" %%% "acres" # Convert km^2 to acres
x %%% "acres"           # Same
x %%% NULL             # Drop units
dropUnits(x)           # Same

# %%%'s precedence is below "^" but above "+" and "*"
# The following fails:
# 2 %%% "m" / (2 %%% "ha") %%% "in/acre"
# The following succeeds:
(2 %%% "m" / (2 %%% "ha")) %%% "in/acre"
1 %m%. ^ 2           # [m]
(1 %m%.) ^ 2         # [m^2]

# For fixed unit assignment, 2nd argument does not matter
# All of the following are equivalent
2 %m%.
2 %m% x
2 %m% 3
2 %m% NULL
2 %m% NA

# Conversion:
x <- 10 %%% "ft"
x %m%.
```

Index

- * **control optimization**
 - RdistanceControls, 148
- * **package**
 - Rdistance-package, 5
- %acre% (%%), 177
- %cm% (%%), 177
- %ft% (%%), 177
- %ha% (%%), 177
- %inches% (%%), 177
- %km% (%%), 177
- %km^2% (%%), 177
- %m% (%%), 177
- %m^2% (%%), 177
- %mi% (%%), 177
- %mi^2% (%%), 177
- %yd% (%%), 177
- %%, 5, 177
- abundEstim, 7
- abundEstim(), 5, 7, 15, 17, 18, 30, 33, 35, 38, 39, 51, 60, 67, 70, 116, 120–122, 144, 151, 165, 173
- AIC(), 21
- AIC.dfunc, 11
- AIC.dfunc(), 15, 165, 166
- autoDistSamp, 12
- autoDistSamp(), 5, 10, 35, 39
- bcCI, 16
- bootstrap, 17
- bootstrap(), 121
- bspline.expansion, 18
- calcLineLength, 19
- calcLineLength(), 42, 44, 45, 57
- checkNEvalPts, 20
- checkUnits, 21
- coef(), 12
- coef.dfunc, 21
- colorize, 22
- contrasts(), 34, 39
- control (RdistanceControls), 148
- controls (RdistanceControls), 148
- convexPartition, 23
- convexPartition(), 44, 52, 57, 110
- cosine.expansion, 26
- cosine.expansion(), 5, 19, 72, 117, 157, 159
- dE.multi, 28, 36
- dE.single, 31, 36
- dfoptim::hjk(), 148
- dfuncEstim, 36
- dfuncEstim(), 5, 7, 8, 10–13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 27, 41, 46–48, 50–53, 60, 61, 64, 65, 67, 68, 70, 72, 76–79, 81, 83, 85, 87, 89, 91, 93, 95, 97, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 107, 112, 113, 116–118, 120, 122, 124–126, 129, 131, 133, 135, 138, 139, 143–145, 153, 155, 157, 159, 162, 164–167, 173, 174, 177
- dfuncEstimErrMsgage, 40
- differentiableLikelihoods, 41
- differentiableLikelihoods(), 148
- distance (Rdistance-package), 5
- distances, 41
- drawTransects, 42
- drawTransects(), 26, 45, 52, 53, 55, 58, 108, 111
- dropUnits (%%), 177
- EDR, 46
- EDR(), 48, 51, 52
- effectiveDistance, 47
- effectiveDistance(), 47, 52, 78, 80, 82, 84, 86, 87, 90, 92, 94, 96, 98, 100, 101
- effort, 48
- errDataUnk, 49
- estimateN, 49
- ESW, 51
- ESW(), 46–48

- exampleSurveyPoly, 52
- expandW, 53
- expansionTerms, 54
- expint::gammainc(), 86
- findSpacing, 55
- findSpacing(), 42, 43, 45, 55, 108, 109, 111
- Gamma.like, 58
- Gamma.like(), 62, 80
- Gamma.start.limits, 60
- GammaModes, 61
- GammaReparam, 62
- GammaReparam(), 59
- getNCores, 63
- groupSizes, 63
- gxEstim, 64
- halfnorm.like, 66
- halfnorm.like(), 5, 35, 39, 118, 142
- halfnorm.start.limits, 68
- hazrate.like, 69
- hazrate.like(), 5, 142
- hazrate.start.limits, 70
- hermite.expansion, 71
- hermite.expansion(), 5, 19, 27, 157
- hist(), 131, 135
- HookeJeeves, 72
- huber.cumFunc, 73
- huber.like, 74
- huber.like(), 5, 73
- huber.start.limits, 76
- insertOneStepBreaks, 77
- integrateDfuncs, 77
- integrateGammaLines, 79
- integrateHalfnormLines, 81
- integrateHalfnormLines(), 87, 96, 101
- integrateHalfnormPoints, 83
- integrateHazrateLines, 85
- integrateHuberLines, 86
- integrateKey, 88
- integrateNegexpLines, 89
- integrateNegexpLines(), 48, 80, 82, 86, 87, 92, 96, 101
- integrateNegexpPoints, 91
- integrateNegexpPoints(), 84, 90
- integrateNumeric, 92
- integrateNumeric(), 48, 80, 82, 84, 86, 87, 90, 92, 96, 98, 100, 101
- integrateOneStepLines, 95
- integrateOneStepLines(), 80, 82, 86, 90, 98, 100
- integrateOneStepNumeric, 97
- integrateOneStepNumeric(), 100
- integrateOneStepPoints, 98
- integrateOneStepPoints(), 84, 98
- integrateTriangleLines, 100
- intercept.only, 102
- is.points, 103
- is.RdistDf, 103
- is.RdistDf(), 13, 28, 31, 36, 128, 153, 176
- is.smoothed, 105
- is.Unitless, 105
- likeParamNames, 106
- line-transect (Rdistance-package), 5
- lines.dfunc, 106
- lm(), 131, 136
- makeLines, 108
- makeLines(), 26, 42, 44, 45, 52, 53, 55, 57, 58
- maximize.g, 112
- mlEstimates, 113
- model.matrix(), 34, 39
- model.matrix.dfunc, 113
- nCovars, 114
- negexp.like, 115
- negexp.like(), 5, 142
- negexp.start.limits, 116
- nLL, 117
- nLL(), 78, 80, 82, 84, 86, 87, 90, 92, 94, 96, 98, 100, 101
- Nlminb, 118
- observationType, 119
- oneBsIter, 120
- oneBsIter(), 18
- oneStep.like, 121
- oneStep.like(), 5, 98, 124
- oneStep.start.limits, 123
- Optim, 125
- Oscars, 126
- OSCARS::oscars(), 24–26, 44, 55, 57, 58
- OSCARS::oscars.control(), 24
- oscarsLimits, 127
- parseModel, 127

- `parseModel()`, [21](#), [41](#), [53](#), [60](#), [64](#), [68](#), [70](#), [72](#),
[76](#), [78](#), [113](#), [116–118](#), [123](#), [125](#), [126](#),
[155](#), [164](#), [174](#), [177](#)
- `perpDists`, [130](#)
- `perpDists()`, [159](#), [161](#)
- `plot.dfunc`, [131](#)
- `plot.dfunc()`, [107](#), [137](#), [145](#), [167](#)
- `plot.dfunc.para`, [131](#), [135](#)
- `point-transect` (*Rdistance*-package), [5](#)
- `predDensity`, [138](#)
- `predDfuncs`, [138](#)
- `predict.dfunc`, [139](#)
- `predict.dfunc()`, [10](#)
- `predict.lm()`, [48](#), [51](#), [79](#), [81](#), [83](#), [85](#), [87](#), [89](#),
[91](#), [93](#), [95](#), [97](#), [99](#), [101](#)
- `predLikelihood`, [143](#)
- `print.abund`, [144](#)
- `print.abund()`, [107](#), [133](#), [145](#), [165](#), [167](#)
- `print.dfunc`, [145](#)
- `print.dfunc()`, [133](#), [144](#), [165](#)
- `pronghornAreas`, [146](#)
- `pronghornDf` (*pronghornAreas*), [146](#)
-
- `Rdistance` (*Rdistance*-package), [5](#)
- `Rdistance`-package, [5](#)
- `RdistanceControls`, [148](#)
- `RdistanceControls()`, [33](#), [37](#)
- `RdistDf`, [149](#)
- `RdistDf()`, [9](#), [13](#), [28](#), [31](#), [35](#), [36](#), [128](#), [129](#),
[161](#), [171](#), [176](#)
-
- `secondDeriv`, [154](#)
- `secondDeriv()`, [30](#), [33](#), [38](#), [121](#), [129](#), [149](#)
- `set.seed()`, [25](#)
- `setOptimizer`, [155](#)
- `setUnits` (%#%), [177](#)
- `setUnits()`, [5](#), [35](#), [39](#), [152](#)
- `sf::st_area()`, [25](#)
- `simple.expansion`, [156](#)
- `simple.expansion()`, [5](#), [19](#), [27](#), [72](#)
- `simpsonCoefs`, [157](#)
- `sine.expansion`, [158](#)
- `sine.expansion()`, [72](#), [157](#)
- `sparrowDetectionData`, [159](#)
- `sparrowDetectionData()`, [161–163](#)
- `sparrowDf`, [160](#)
- `sparrowDf()`, [6](#)
- `sparrowDfuncObserver`, [162](#)
- `sparrowSiteData`, [162](#)
-
- `sparrowSiteData()`, [160–162](#)
- `startLimits`, [163](#)
- `startLimits()`, [72](#), [113](#), [118](#), [125](#), [126](#)
- `stats::nlminb()`, [148](#)
- `stats::optim()`, [148](#)
- `summary.abund`, [165](#)
- `summary.abund()`, [144](#)
- `summary.dfunc`, [166](#)
- `summary.dfunc()`, [144](#), [145](#), [165](#)
- `summary.rowwise_df`, [168](#)
-
- `thrasherDetectionData`, [169](#)
- `thrasherDetectionData()`, [171](#), [172](#)
- `thrasherDf`, [170](#)
- `thrasherDf()`, [6](#)
- `thrasherSiteData`, [171](#)
- `thrasherSiteData()`, [169](#), [171](#)
- `transectType`, [172](#)
- `triangle.like`, [172](#)
- `triangle.like()`, [5](#), [175](#)
- `triangle.start.limits`, [174](#)
-
- `unitHelpers` (%#%), [177](#)
- `units::set_units()`, [35](#), [39](#), [152](#), [177](#)
- `units::valid_udunits()`, [35](#), [39](#), [149](#), [152](#),
[178](#)
- `unnest`, [176](#)
-
- `varcovarEstim`, [177](#)
- `varcovarEstim()`, [33](#), [121](#), [129](#)